

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARIES

A standard linear barcode consisting of vertical black lines of varying widths on a white background.

3 1761 00589526 3



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation







# The Boke of Saint Albans





The

# Boke of Saint Albans

BY

DAME JULIANA BERNERS

CONTAINING

TREATISES ON HAWKING, HUNTING,  
AND COTE ARMOUR:

PRINTED AT SAINT ALBANS BY THE SCHOOLMASTER-PRINTER IN 1486  
REPRODUCED IN FACSIMILE

With an Introduction by

WILLIAM BLADES

AUTHOR OF "THE LIFE AND TYPOGRAPHY OF WILLIAM CAXTON"

LONDON  
ELLIOT STOCK, PATERNOSTER ROW, E.C.

"Manhood I am, therefore I me delyghte  
To hunt and hawke, to nourish up and fede  
The greyhound to the course, the hawke to th' flight,  
And to bestryde a good and lusty stede."

*From SIR THOMAS MORE'S Poems.*

Z

241

B37  
1486a



1032068



## Introduction.



SEVERAL independent printing presses were established in England before the close of the fifteenth century; and from them issued numerous books which are invaluable to all students of antiquity from the light they throw upon the social habits and literary progress of our nation. Of these it may safely be said that not one exceeds in interest that work of an unknown typographer, which is here presented in facsimile, and which, from the town in which it was compiled, as well as printed, is known to all bibliographers as "The Book of St. Albans." This work has always been a favourite, partly because our feelings are appealed to in favour of the writer who for centuries has taken rank as England's earliest poetess, and is still, in all our Biographical Dictionaries, reckoned among "noble authors;" and partly because we love mysteries, and a mystery has always enshrouded the nameless printer. The subjects, too, so curiously alliterative—Hawking, Hunting, and Heraldry, have an enticing and antique flavour about them, being just those with which, at that period, every man claiming to be "gentle" was expected to be familiar; while ignorance of their laws and language was to confess himself a "churl."

As to the language and orthography of the book, it is a never-failing source of interest, being quite different from any other printed work of the fifteenth century, except the St. Albans' Chronicle from the same pres. Among bibliographers it ranks as "*rarissimus*," the known copies being so few that they might probably be counted on the fingers of one hand.

Looking at the book, then, all round, it will be a convenient plan to consider these subjects separately, and to treat the volume in its four aspects of Authorship, Typography and Bibliography, Subject-matter, and Philology.





## CHAPTER I.

### Authorship.

HISTORIANS and Biographers, together with Librarians and Booksellers, have a natural antipathy to anonymous books; and, wherever they can, are willing to accept the smallest amount of evidence as proof of paternity. It saves much trouble and avoids numerous errors in cataloguing, when a recognised name can be associated with an anonymous work. From this tendency a bad habit has arisen of attributing to particular writers books concerning which the evidence of authorship is doubtful, if not altogether untrustworthy.

In this very book we have a striking instance of such erroneous attribution. The three treatises, of which the book is made up, are quite distinct, and to a portion only of one of these is there any author's name attached. Yet that name, "Dam Julyans Barnes," altered by degrees to "Dame Juliana Berners," is now universally received as the name of the authoress of the whole volume. With even less show of reason she is credited with the authorship of a "Treatise on Fishing" for which there is not the shadow of evidence, that treatise having been added ten years later by Wynken de Worde, who, when reprinting the Book of St. Albans, thought that the subject of Fishing would complete the work as a Gentleman's Vade Mecum.

There are really four distinct tractates in the Book of St. Albans, although the two last being on Heraldry are generally counted as one.

The first is on Hawking; to this no name of the author is attached, but it has a prologue which no one acquainted with the other writings of the printer can doubt to be his. Of this we shall have more to say anon.

The second tractate is on Hunting: it is specially associated with the name of Dame Juliana Berners, and will require a more extended elucidation than the others.

Here the evidence of authorship is as good as for most pieces of fifteenth-century production—a period at which literary rights did not exist, and when the scribe, if at all acquainted with the subject upon which the book he was copying treated, did not scruple to interpolate his own ideas, and that without any egotistical vanity, but merely from a feeling that all books being written for the good of men, and not from vanity in the author, it was a duty to improve them where possible. But as improvement mostly meant the addition of something on the same subject taken from another manuscript, we have the constant occurrence of one MS. being a compilation of two or three others, and yet appearing under the name of the last compiler.

In this treatise on Hunting we have the express statement at the end of the twenty-fourth page—“Explicit Dam Julyans Barnes.” This might certainly apply to the transcription only, but, when taken with Wynken de Worde’s version, the probability is, that the lady compiled as well as wrote it. In the reprint by Wynken de Worde, only ten years later than the original, he varies the colophon thus:—“¶ Explicit dame Julyans Barnes doctrine in her boke of huntyng,” the whole reprint ending “Enprynted at westmestre by Wynkyn the Worde the yere of thyncarnacōn of our lorde. M. CCCC. lxxxvij.” So that he, a contemporary, evidently believed her to be the authoress. Later authorities attributed the whole book to her pen, but as they were in possession of no more evidence than we now are, and probably not so much, we should attach no weight to such statements, which were founded simply on a vivid imagination.

But what is known of the lady who is admitted to have compiled the twenty-four pages on Hunting? Who was Dame Julians Barnes? Here, unless a sentimental and inventive sympathy be employed to throw an artificial light upon the darkness, we are in total ignorance. A biography of her has certainly been written, and all our Dictionaries and Encyclopædias devote a page or two to her history, which, in 1810, under Haslewood's nurture, attained its full development. Even so far back as 1549, or nearly a century after her supposed death, the learned Bale, who wrote an account of all our English celebrities, allows his gallantry to bedeck her memory with garments fine. "Foemina illustris!" he exclaims, "corporis et animi dotibus abundans ac forma elegantia spectabilis" (An illustrious lady! abundantly gifted, both in body and mind, and charming in the elegance of her mien). Considering that the name of the lady is the whole of the text upon which Bale had to build, this is by no means a bad specimen of imaginative biography, and became a good foundation for future commentators. The story, however, fared rather badly at first; for Holinshed, in 1577, while echoing Bale very exactly, is made, by a curious error of the printer, who mistook the letters *rn* for *m*, to call the authoress Julyan Bemes; while Baker in his Chronicles, too careleſs even to refer to the original text, adds another blunder to the story, and, thinking that Julyan must be a man's name, dubs the authoress "a gentleman of excellent gifts, who wrote certain treatises of Hawking and Hunting."

Chauncy, in 1700 (History of Hertfordshire), restored her sex to the lady, and then set to work upon making a family history for her. His first discovery was that, being a "Dame," she was of noble blood. Finding also that the family name of Lord Berners was, in olden time, spelt occasionally Barnes, he soon supplied a father for our authoress, in the person of Sir James Berners. And so the game of making history went on merrily up to the time of Joseph Haslewood, who, in 1810, reprinted Wynken de Worde's

edition of the Book of St. Albans, and supplied a full-blown biography of the authoress, giving particulars of her birth and education, the occupations of her youthful days, and a most imposing pedigree. Let us quote Haslewood's own words: "Julyans, or Juliana, Barnes, otherwise Berners, who has been generally designated as the authoress of the present volume, is supposed to have been born, towards the latter end of the fourteenth century, at Roding-Berners, in the county of Essex. The received report is that she was the daughter of Sir James Berners, whose son was created Baron Berners, temp. Henry IV., and that she once held the situation of Prioress of Sopwell Nunnery, in Hertfordshire." He then attributes to her the authorship of all four works in the Book of St. Albans. The difficulty of accounting for a lady so placed writing upon such subjects, is cleverly, if not satisfactorily settled by assuming that she passed her teens at court, partaking of the amusements of the field, and writing for her own use a commonplace book on various subjects. Then retiring through disappointment (doubtless a love affair) to a cloister, her rank raised her to the position of prioress. There in her seclusion, writing amidst the solitude of listless hours and vain regrets, she versified the general rules of sport from her own pleasant recollection, and from the diaries of her youthful happiness, which fortunately she had preserved. If we remember the mania which seized all classes for diary-keeping at the beginning of this century, when Haslewood wrote this, it will deepen our sense of humour to note that he attributes private diary-keeping to a young lady who lived *ante* 1450.

But enough of such sham biography; let us return to facts.

The word "Dame" did not in the fifteenth century, as it does now, imply any connection with a titled family, it meant simply Mistress or Mrs. Chaucer speaks of Dame Partlet in this sense; and had the Dame Julyans Barnes of the fifteenth century lived now, she would have been just "Mrs. Barnes."

Similarity of name in history, like similarity of sound in philology.

is a will-o'-the-wisp which has led many a writer into a bog. Allowing that Lord Berners' name was sometimes spelt Barnes, is that sufficient reason for making our authoress a member of his family? I think not.

That the greater portion of the book on Hunting was compiled by Mistress Barnes, is probably correct,\* and had she written much more, and produced even an original work on the subject, she would not have stood alone, even at that early period, as an authoress. Crystine de Pisan, two of whose works were printed by Caxton, was contemporary with Julians Barnes, and left not only numerous original writings behind her—one of which was upon the Art of War—but left her mark, and that no mean nor ignoble one, upon the political course and moral development of her countrymen. But Dame Julyans' work upon Hunting is certainly not original, as indeed very few works upon any subject were at that period. This is evident from a glance at the text and the grouping of the subjects. It begins with distinguishing the varieties of beasts and their ages; the proper names by which to designate the beasts, singly and together; on hunting and dressing a Roe, a Boar, a Hare; of flaying; of the horns of a Roebuck; of the Hart; of the seasons; of the Hare. Then follows, from another source, an interpolation of a discourse between a Master of the Hunt and his man, going over portions of the same ground again; and this ended, we get back again to the original MS. and the dismemberment of various beasts. All through, with the exception of the interpolated conversation, the text is addressed to "My deare childe." Thus we read—"Do so, my child;" "Think what I say, my son;" "My lief childer;" "Say, child, where you go? my dame taught you so." Evidently that portion was originally written for a mother to use

\* Taking Berners and Barnes to be the same word, it is curious to note—in connection with the work attributed to Dame Juliana, viz., *The Book of Hunting*—that the masters of that sport employed men called *Berners*, to be ready with relays of horses and to feed the hounds.—See Halliwell's "Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words."

as a school-book, by which her son would learn to read, and, at the same time, become familiar with the terms of venery.

In the Bodleian Library is a small manuscript on the Terms of the Chase, the beginning of which is :—

“Mi dere sones, where ye fare, be frith or by fell,  
Take good hede in his tyme how Trifram wol tell.”

This manuscript was probably copied by some youth as a school-exercise, which would account for the following odd colophon—  
“Explicit, expliceat, ludere scriptor eat.”

Compare the above with the opening stanza of the verses we attribute to Mistress Barnes :—

“Wheresoever ye fare, by frith or by fell,\*  
My dear child, take heed how Trifram doth you tell.”†

The rest of the Oxford MS. is in similar accord with the print, but nowhere in it is there a word about Mistress Barnes.

The words “Explicit Dam Julyans Barnes” have been considered to prove that the lady was alive when the book was printed. If, however, Sir James Berners were her father, of which there is no evidence, she must have been close upon a hundred years old in 1486, as he died in 1390. But this is importing a needless difficulty into the theory, which is not rendered more probable by making the authoress and printer contemporary.

It may here be as well to say a few words about Sopwell Nunnery, over which, without a particle of evidence, our authoress is supposed to have presided. Sopwell Nunnery, Hertfordshire, was founded about 1140, under the rule of St. Benedict, and subject to the Abbot of St. Albans, from which it was not far

\* “By frith or by fell” = by forest or by plain; but see Halliwell’s Dictionary.

† Sir Trifram, the well-known knight of the Round Table, was a mighty hunter, and the great authority upon all subjects connected with the chase. Popular belief attributed to him the origin of all the special terms used in hunting, and his name was invoked to give authority to any statement upon this subject, just as in a later century the arithmetical rules of Cocker give rise to the popular phrase—“According to Cocker.”

distant. The rule of life among the inmates was very severe, and at the first the nuns were enclosed under locks and bolts, made additionally sure by the seal, on the door, of the Abbot for the time being (Chauncy's History, p. 466). How long this lasted, and how the nuns liked it, history saith not; but, in 1338, a re-organisation had become imperative, and the Abbot of St. Albans, among other instructions, ordered that no nun should lodge out of the house, and no guest within it (Newcome, p. 468). There does not seem much scope left here for the Priorefs to take an active part in field sports, though a hundred and fifty years later, which was about the period of our "Dame," many relaxations of the strict rules may have become common. But, then, we have apparently accurate lists of all the Prioreffes of Sopwell in the fifteenth century, and the name of Juliana Barnes does not appear at all in them. The known dates are these:—In 1416, Matilda de Flamstede was Prioreff. Four years before her death, which was in 1430, she was succeeded by Letitia Wyttenham. The next whose name is known was Joan Chapell; the date of her appointment is not recorded, but as she was set aside in 1480 on account of her age, she had probably occupied the position for many years. In 1480, Elizabeth Webb succeeded Joan Chapell.

What is really known of the Dame is almost nothing, and may be summed up in the following few words. She probably lived at the beginning of the fifteenth century, and she possibly compiled from existing MSS. some rhymes on Hunting.

There is still the authorship of the other parts of the book to determine, and if similarity of wording and phraseology may be taken as evidence, they were all from one pen.

At the end of the book on Heraldry the printer has put the following—"Here endeth the book of Blasing of Arms translated and compiled together at Seynt Albons." Here we have the printer's own statement as to the origin of his text, and doubtless this, as well as the treatise on Hawking, were made up or "compiled" from more

than one manuscript in French. Haslewood gives a list of such as are in the British Museum, in several of which portions of the printed work are contained. Works on Hunting and Hawking were not uncommon in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, and are still found in all large collections of manuscripts. There were several in the libraries of the Dukes of Burgundy in the fifteenth century, and many are still extant in the national collections of England and France.

The other tractates in the volume have an origin very similar to that of the Book of Hunting. The Book of Hawking is an evident compilation from several manuscripts, which accounts perhaps for its deficiency in arrangement and want of continuity. The Book of Coat Armour also has two distinct sources in contemporary works, one of which was the "De Officio Militari" of Nicholas Upton. From this the schoolmaster copied Book IV. almost word for word, supplementing it from "The Book of the Lineage of Coat Armour," as stated already. The only other literary work which can be attributed to our printer is the extensive compilation known as the St. Albans' Chronicle or the *Fructus Temporum*. But neither in the Chronicle, where he simply combined two histories into one, nor in the Book of St. Albans, which is also a compilation, does the schoolmaster show any literary ability above the average of scholars of his period.

As specimens of the schoolmaster's powers of composition we annex the following, the originals of which can be seen in the ensuing facsimile pages:—

### **Prologue to the Book of Hawking.**

"In so much that gentlemen and honest persons have great delight in Hawking, and desire to have the manner to take hawks: and also how and in what wise they should guide them ordinatorily: and to know the gentle terms in communing of their hawks: and to understand their sicknesses and infirmities, and to know medicines for them according, and the many notable terms that be used in hawking

both of their hawks and of the fowls that their hawks shall slay. Therefore this book following in a due form shows very knowledge of such pleasure to gentlemen and persons disposed to see it."

### Prologue to Mistress Barnes' Compilation on Hunting.

"Likewise, as in the Book of Hawking aforesaid are written and noted the terms of pleasure belonging to gentlemen having delight therein, in the same manner this book following sheweth to such gentle persons the manner of Hunting for all manner of beasts, whether they be beasts of Venery, or of Chace, or Rascal. And also it sheweth all the terms convenient as well to the hounds as to the beasts aforesaid. And in certain there be many diverse of them as it is declared in the book following."

### Prologue to the Book of Coat Armour.

"Here in this book following is determined the lineage of Coat Armours: and how gentlemen shall be known from ungentle men, and how bondage began first in angel and after succeeded in man kind, as it is here showed in proces, both in the childer of Adam and also of Noe, and how Noe divided the world in three parts to his three sons. Also there be showed the nine colours in Arms figured by the nine orders of Angels, and it is showed by the foresaid colours which be worthy and which be royal; and of regalities which be noble and which be excellent. And there be here the vertues of Chivalry, and many other notable and famous things, to the pleasure of noble persons shall be showed, as the works following witnesses, whosoever liketh to see them and read them, which were too long now to rehearse. And after these notable things aforesaid followeth the Blasing of all manner Arms in Latin, French, and English."

So wrote the schoolmaster. Let us now see what kind of book this is typographically.



## CHAPTER II.

### Typegraphy and Bibliography.



OLD books must be loved, and their idiosyncrasies carefully studied, before they will yield up *all* their treasures; that done, the observant lover will obtain possession of both soul and body; he may revel in the intellectual feast provided by the author, or he may study the material and mechanical features of the books as represented by the peculiarities of paper and the habits and customs of the various printers. Then, by grouping these as a botanist does his flowers, according to their organisation into classes, orders, genera, and species, he may extract from his volumes true replies to questions which otherwife would remain hidden for ever. So true is the dictum, “The Mind it is which sees, and not the Eye alone.”

Many bibliophiles, however, of education and taste have been positively blind when outside the circle of their own particular studies. So it was with the Rev. Dr. M’Neille, a well-known critic and book-collector of sixty years ago. When addressing Dr. Dibdin he wrote thus of “The Book of St. Albans”—“This book is itself useless, and only a *bon morceau* for the quizzical collector.” With such feelings towards one of the most curious works which this country produced during the infancy of the printing press, it was simply impossible that the interest of its pages should be revealed to him; and however rich in divinity and *editiones principes* of the classics the library of the

worthy doctor may have been, it is evident that our Book of St. Albans could never have been aught but an alien on *his* book-shelves.

The works printed by William Caxton were almost without exception in the English tongue, while the contemporary presses of Oxford, St. Albans, and Machlinia were nearly all in Latin. Of the eight books at present known to have been printed at St. Albans, the only two in English were the "Fructus Temporum" and the work under review. The "Fructus" or St. Albans' Chronicle is the same as that printed two years previously by Caxton, with the addition of certain ecclesiastical events and Papal chronology, probably added by the printer himself to please the monks.

The Book of St. Albans' and the St. Albans' Chronicle make a class of themselves; but as it is impossible to understand their position without a glance at the other works from the same press, we will give a tabulated description of the whole eight.

#### BOOKS PRINTED AT ST. ALBANS IN FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

	Title of Book.	Language.	Size.	Date of Printing.	No. of Printed Leaves.	Type	Size of Printed Page.	Signatures.	Printed Initials.	Ink.	Device.	Wood-cuts.	Lines in Page.
1	Augustini Dacti elegancie	Latin	4to	n. d.	18	1	5 $\frac{3}{4}$ × 3 $\frac{1}{2}$	none	none	black	none	none	36
2	Laur: de Saona Rhetorica nova	Latin	4to	1480	81	2-1	5 $\frac{3}{4}$ × 3 $\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	24
3	Alberti quest. de modo Significandi.	Latin	4to	1480	46	3-1	5 $\frac{3}{4}$ × 3 $\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	32
4	Joan: Canonici Quest. sup. Phys. Arist.	Latin	fol.	1481	174	3	8 × 5	signed	none	black	none	none	44
5	Exempla Sacre scripture	Latin	4to	1481	83	3	5 $\frac{3}{4}$ × 3 $\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	32
6	Ant. Andreæ super Logica Aristotelis	Latin	4to	1482	335	3	5 $\frac{3}{4}$ × 3 $\frac{1}{2}$	signed	none	black	none	none	32
7	Chronicles of England	Engl.	fol.	1483?	295	2	8 × 5	every leaf signed	yes	black & red	with	yes	32
8	The Book of St. Albans	Engl.	fol.	1486	88	2-4	8 × 5	signed	yes	black & red	with	yes	32

But who was the printer? What was his name? Was he associated with the great Abbey? and is there any internal or external evidence in his works to connect him with any other printer or any other town?

The only notice we have of the printer is an accidental one by Wynken de Worde, who, in reprinting the St. Albans' Chronicle, says

in the colophon, “Here endith this present Chronicle . . . compiled in a book and also enprinted by our sometime Schoolmaster of St. Alban.” He was a schoolmaster, then, and this will account for the nature of his early works, all scholastic and all in Latin. Not till the end of his typographical career did he realise the fact that the printing-pres, instead of being the hobby of a few learned men, was the educator of the people, the whole nation ; and then he gave his countrymen what they wanted—a history of their own country and a book upon the whole (secular) duty of the gentleman, as then understood.

The name of the schoolmaster-printer is quite unknown. No notice of him is found in the records of the Abbey, nor does he appear in any contemporary document. Yet here, as in Mistress Barnes’s case, imagination has come to the rescue and a legendary name has been provided.

Finding that the Prologue to the Book of Hawking began with the words, “*Insomuch* as gentle men and honest persons have great delight in Hawking ;” finding also that the St. Alban’s Chronicle from the same pres began thus : “*Insomuch* as it is necessary ;” and bearing in mind that certain old authors had veiled *their* names in the first words of their works, Dr. Chauncy arrived at the sagacious conclusion that the St. Albans printer wished to veil *his* name, which really was “*Insomuch*.” The joke, for it almost seems like one, does not bear even the scrutiny which itself invites, for although the schoolmaster uses the words in two other places, in neither case are they at the beginning of a chapter.\* It should be added that in this the worthy historian of Hertfordshire only followed the lead of both Bale and Pits.

Was he connected with the Abbey ? I think not. There is not a word to suggest such a connection, although we may take it for granted that the Abbot and his fraternity could not have frowned upon

\* On sig. a 1 recto of “Cote Armour” is “*Insomuch as all gentleness comes of God* ;” and upon sig. b 1ij verso is “*Insomuch that in the fifth quadrat*,” &c. The use of the word in these cases could have no veiled meaning, and it was probably only a peculiarity of diction which had become a habit with the schoolmaster.

the printer, or he would never have established himself. His imprints all mention the town of St. Albans, but never the Abbey, and his position was probably similar to that of Caxton, who was simply a tenant of the Abbot of Westminster, but, so far as is known, nothing more.

Was he connected with Caxton and the Westminster press? Without a shadow of doubt I say, No! Mr. E. Scott, of the MS. department in the British Museum, has indeed strung together a number of surmises to show that the Schoolmaster was employed by Caxton, and that all the books without date or place hitherto attributed to Westminster were really printed at St. Albans. But internal evidence is against any such gratuitous assumption. There is nothing in common between the two printers in any of their habits or customs except the possession of Caxton's No. 3 type. This is the only one of Caxton's types used outside his own office (for W. de Worde, his successor in house and business, must not be regarded as a separate printer). Caxton employed it from his arrival in England in 1477 till 1484, when it makes its last appearance in the headings of "Æsop," the "Order of Chivalry," and "The Golden Legend." In 1485 Caxton obtained a new fount, similar in shape and character, and from that time the old No. 3 disappears to make way for the new and smaller type No. 5. This being more suited to the taste of the day, we find the larger and worn fount passing over to the country press of St. Albans, where the Schoolmaster first uses it in 1486, being the identical year in which its successor appears in Caxton's "Royal Book." We may here observe that after the stoppage of the St. Albans' Press the same fount finds its way back again and is seen in W. de Worde's reprint, in 1496-97, of the two English St. Albans books. But the discovery of a copy of Caxton's Boethius in the old Grammar School at St. Albans, and the numerous fragments of old books extracted from its covers, are quoted as confirming the idea. Yet the book itself and all these fragments were from Westminster, not a single one being from a known St. Albans book, and they included the Caxton "Chronicles," 1480, the "Dictes," 1477, and the

still earlier “Life of Jason;” so that we had better at once remove the whole Westminster press, dated and undated, to St. Albans, if such an argument is to have any force. These fragments, indeed, can only point to the fact that the copy of Boethius was bound in the printing office, as was commonly the case with the books from Caxton’s press.

Again, Mr. Scott draws attention to the fact that a page of the St. Albans’ Book, 1486, has been copied by a contemporary writer on to the blank leaves of one of Caxton’s earliest books. ’Tis true; but this copying of part of one book into another, printed ten years before, has no typographical bearing whatever. Lastly, the name Caufston appears in an old St. Albans’ Register of the early part of the fifteenth century. But this, again, means positively nothing. Caxton’s name was not at all uncommon; there were Caufstons or Caxtons in nearly every English county, and I have quite a long list of them.

It is highly probable that Caxton, while at Westminster, in the van of all the literature of his day, would have communications of some sort with the important town of St. Albans; but that the two printers assisted one another in the production of books, is, so far as any evidence goes, a pure fiction.

Let us now glance at the bibliographical aspect of the book.

The work itself has no title. It is difficult in our time, accustomed as we are to “teeming millions” of books, each with its own title-page, to conceive a period when the press sent out works without even the shadow of a title-page. Before the invention of printing, the author simply headed his first page with the name of the work, as “Here begins the Confessio Amantis,” or “Hic incipit Parvus Catho,” and, without preface or more ado, the text commenced. Sometimes even this little notification was omitted, and, as in Caxton’s “Jason,” “The Chess Book,” “Tulle,” and many other fifteenth-century books, the subject of the work had to be learned by reading the text. So it is with the book now under review; it comprises four distinct works, but to one only is there any heading, and that has the bare line “Incipit liber armorum.”

The first, "The Book of Hawking," starts straight off—"This is the manner to keep Hawks," and occupies three signatures, a, b, and c, of eight leaves each, and sig. d, which has but four leaves, on purpose that this portion might be complete alone, if so desired. The same idea controlled the arrangement of "The Book of Hunting," which, beginning on sig. e j, ends with Dame Juliana's "Explicit" on the recto of sig. f iiiij. This left the last seven pages of the quaternion to be filled up. Now it was a common practice, both with the scribes and with the early printers, when they got to the end of their text and found that a page or two of blank paper was left, to occupy the blank pages with such common household aphorisms or popular rhymes as came easily to the memory, or were at hand in some other book. So here the schoolmaster-printer fills up his vacant pages with a number of odd sentences and rhymes, most of which occur over and over again in numerous manuscripts of early poetry. Among others we notice the well-known :—

"Arise erly,  
serue God deuouteli,  
and the world besily."  
    &c.                  &c.

Also the folks proverb :—

"Too wyues in oon hous,  
Too cattys and oon mous,  
Too dogges and oon boon,  
Theis shall neū accorde oon."

Then the list of proper terms to be used by gentlemen and those curious in their speech is of very common occurrence :—

"An herde of Hertis  
An herde of all mañ dere  
A pride of Lionys  
A fleuth of Beeris."  
    &c.                  &c.

This was evidently copied from some MS., and ends with "¶ Explicit," and nothing more. On the next page we have the proper terms for carving or dismembering beasts, fowls, and fishes, followed on the last leaf by a list of bishoprics and provinces.

Having thus filled up all his leaves, the printer begins his third subject on a fresh signature, and introduces the "Liber Armorum" with the Preface (already printed). A long work on the "Blasing of Arms" follows, beginning on sig. c j, and ending on sig. f 10.

This is extremely interesting, both in matter and in the very rude woodcut representations of armorial bearings with which the text is profusely illustrated. Except in one or two cases of uncommon tints, these are all colour-printed, as are the initials to paragraphs. In the Grenville copy, the pressman having forgotten to roll the "forme," the initials all appear in that semi-tinted state which would be the natural result of such an omission. We notice, too, that where the coats of arms require, say, three colours on one page, then the initials are also in three colours; but if only one colour is required for the arms, only one colour, and that the same, is used for the initials. Occasionally, where a peculiar colour was necessary, a brush was used to insert that tint by hand.

In workmanship the St. Albans printer, especially in the English books, is much inferior to the contemporary issue from the Westminster pres. The types are worse, the arrangement worse, the presswork worse, and the ink worse. From this point of view alone, the theory that he would print for Caxton so much better than he did for himself, is not worth serious consideration.

The Book of St. Albans went through many editions, particulars of which are difficult to obtain.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1486. The Boke of St. Albans (Brit. Mus.).<br>149—. By Wynken de Worde "at the sygne<br>of the Sonne."<br>1496. By Wynken de Worde (Brit. Mus.).<br>15—. By W. Powell. "Imprinted at London<br>in Fletestrete at the sygne of George<br>next to faynt Dunston's Church by<br>Wylliam Powell.<br>15—. By W. Copland. "Imprinted at<br>London in Flete Street at the sygne<br>of the Rose Garlande by Wylliam<br>Copland for Richard Tottell"<br>(Brit. Mus.). | 15—. By W. Copland. "In Lothebury"<br>4to.<br>15—. By W. Copland. "In faynt Martyns<br>parish in the Vinetre upon the three<br>crane wharfe."<br>1548? By W. Copland. "Imprynted at<br>London in the Vyentre vpon the<br>thre Craned Wharfe by Wylliam<br>Copland."<br>1550. By W. Powell. "Hawkyng Hun-<br>tynge and Fishynge." 8vo. Lon-<br>don.<br>1551? By Abraham Vele. |
|--|--|

- 15—. By Henry Tab. "Imprynted at London in Paul's chyrch yarde by me Héry Tab" (Brit. Mus.).
- 15—. By J. Waley. "Imprinted at London in Foster laen by Johñ Waley" 4to.
1561. By Copland. In this year Copland was fined for "a book of Hawkyng, Huntyng, and fysshynge cōtrary to the orders of this howse—iiij d" (Herbert, p. 367).
1586. By E. Alde. 4to. (Bib. Dec.).
1590. By John Wolfe "at the sygne of the Gunne."
1595. By H. Lownes. "The Gentleman's Academie or the Booke of St. Albans \*\*\* Compiled by Julian Barnes in the year from the incarnation of Christ 1486. And now reduced into a better method by
- G. M. (Gervase Markham). London. 4to. (Brit. Mus.).
1596. By Wolffe.
1596. By IIslip. "Hawking Hunting Fowling and Fishing," by Adam IIslip. 4to.
1596. By E. Alde. "Hawking Hunting Fowling and Fishing," by Edward Alde.
1600. By Wolffe.
1606. By Wolffe.
1614. By Helme. "A Jewell for Gentrie by S. T." 4to. (Brit. Mus.).
1793. "The Book of Cote Armour." London, 4to, reprinted by J. Dallaway, with an excellent introduction (Brit. Mus.).
1810. The Boke of Hawking Hunting and Cote Arniour. Hazlewood's reprint. London. 4to. (Brit. Mus.).

How did the schoolmaster at St. Albans obtain his types? This is a puzzling question in the present state of palæotypography. Mr. Bradshaw of Cambridge has, by unwearyed study of early printed books, thrown great light upon the connection and genealogy of numerous founts used by fifteenth-century printers, and systematic attention to the minute peculiarities of each printer is doubtless the only way in which those old books can be forced to yield up their secrets; but the task is immense, and beyond the powers of any one man to complete. Some day, however, when the palæotypography of this country, as well as of the Continental presses, shall have received that full technical and philosophical analysis which time is sure to bring, the more fortunate bibliographer of the future will be able with certainty to track the footsteps and operations of the early typefounders, and will be enabled to state for certain to what extent Caxton and the St. Albans printer were their own typefounders, and to what extent and to whom they looked for outside help. As the case now stands, we can only confess our ignorance of where the St. Albans types came from.



## CHAPTER III.

### The Subjects Treated.

N the rude civilisation of the fifteenth century, a year's experience of which would send most of us to our graves, the mental occupation as well as the bodily recreation of our ancestors was almost confined to hunting and hawking. “Fishing with an Angle” came in as a bad third, being too tame a pursuit for men who were no men if not men of war. Mimic war—war on the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air—war which could be pursued in times of peace, and which yet required knowledge, patience, fortitude, and courage—this had great attractions, and we cannot wonder at the general popularity of these pursuits.

The first treatise in the following reprint is upon Hawking, a pastime essentially aristocratic from the great expense it entailed in the purchase, breeding, and maintenance of the birds. This, indeed, coupled with the diminution of game consequent on the progress of civilisation and the increase of the population, led to the gradual decadence of the sport, and nearly to its extinction in the eighteenth century, although, in very rare cases, falconry is even now practised.

As we have seen, one of the most difficult objects in hawking was to obtain an easy command of the proper vocabulary, and so at first start our author instructs us in “The manner to speak of Hawks, from the egg.” We must not say a young hawk is hatched, but

'disclosed ;' they do not breed but "eyer ;" it was a want of culture in any falconer to say that hawks were building their nest, they "timbered" it. When the young could first leave the nest they were "Bowesses," and when they could fly they were "Branchers," and then was the time to catch and train them.

When the young were caught, which was with nets, the first thing was to "ensile" them, that is, to "take a needle and thread and sew up the eyelids," so that they "see never a dele." After a night and a day the threads were cut softly for fear of breaking the "lyddis of the ighen," then they were fed with well-washed flesh, but kept awake the next night and day, after which they were supposed to be tame, or "reclaimed."

The various diseases to which Hawks are liable are then explained, and medicines prescribed for them. Some of these are very absurd and some contradictory. Then comes a variety of terms for every movement and habit, for every limb or part of the body, and for almost every feather in the plumage. In this minute description the author begins at the feet of the bird and so works upwards, as when "Knygghtis been harneffide."

Next we are instructed how important it is to be careful of the manner of guiding the Hawk the first time it is ready to "nomme" a partridge; how to reward her by giving her the head and neck, after which on no account is she to fly again till she has "rejoiced," i.e., sharpened her beak and shaken her feathers. More medicines follow, among which is how to get rid of "lies" (lice). "Take a piece of rough blanket and hold it to the fire till it is quite hot; wrap the hawk therein, and without hurting hold her 'softly and stilly' in your hands, and all the vermin will creep into the cloth." A happy thought this!

The "Gesse," or strip of leather by which the Hawk is held when carrying her on the hand, is next described, together with the creance or long line. More medicines still, and then how to treat Hawks when "in mew," or moulting, a matter of great importance. To promote

"mewing" give the flesh of a kid, a young swan, and especially rats flesh; stewed adders are also strongly recommended, or chickens which have been fed upon wheat soaked in broth of vipers.

Gout seems a common disease in various parts of the Hawk's body, which may be known by swelling and "ungladness;" also rheum and fever and blains and agrum, which last is cured by a red-hot silver needle thrust into the nostrils. Botches in the jaw should be "kutte with a knyfe." More terms follow for various habits and actions, the last paragraph being upon the variety of Bells used for Hawks. There should be two, one a "femytoyn" (semitone) below the other. "The Bells of Melen (Milan?) were the best, but," says the author, "there be now used Dutchland bells, of a town called durdright (Dordrecht), and they be passing good, sonowre (sonorous) of ringing in shrillnes, and well lasting."

The whole ends with a list of various species of Hawks and their appropriateness to the various stations of life, among which are—

- |                                      |                           |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| An Eagle for an Emperor.             | A Merlyon for a Lady.     |
| A Gerkalcon for a King.              | A Goshawk for a Yeoman.   |
| A Peregrine for an Earl.             | A Sparehawk for a Priest. |
| A Muskyte for "an holiwater clerke." |                           |

The second treatise is upon Hunting, and has a short preface, which probably came, like the first, from the pen of the Schoolmaster.

The work is all in metre, and evidently intended for boys to learn by heart. It begins by telling "my dere chylde" the various kinds of beast to be hunted; the changes of name they take as they grow older; the variety of horns; how to skin and dismember; the various cries and noises to be used; the seasons of hunting various beasts.

Then follow instructions how to hunt the Hare, and what to say to the hounds, who must always be addressed in French, as "arere!" when he enters the kennel-door; "this is the first word, my son, of venery." "Sa fa cy auaunt," "Sweff mon amy sweff," and other similar cries are noted down, some to be shouted twice only and some thrice,

the chief cry being "So how." The knowledge of when and how often these cries should be used was most important, as their proper use would bring "worship among all men." Here, apparently, in the midst of one essay, another is interpolated, and we are treated to a portion of some old dialogue like "The Master of the Hunt," in which the "Man" asks all sorts of questions and the "Master" replies. It might indeed be dubbed "The Hunter's Catechism." This occupies eight pages, and then we fall back upon the original rhyme again and the instructions of the Dame to "my childe," ending with the "Explicit" of Dame Julyans Barnes. Some leaves remaining to be filled up, the moral and other sentences, as already described at page 21, were added.

Perhaps the third treatise upon Coat Armour and the Blason of Arms is the most interesting portion of the book. The quaintness of some of the explanations is very amusing, and many people will find more points of sympathy, both historical and technical, with this than with the others.

The headline, "Incipit Liber Armorum," gives us at once the title of the manuscript from which the text was compiled. "Heraldry Run Mad" might indeed have been an appropriate title for this, as well as all similar tractates; for the author, in his anxiety to honour the science, does not scruple to take the reader back historically not to Noah only, but to Adam, whose spade, he tells us, was the first shield in Heraldry, and who was the first to bear Coat Armour. The argument, if it may so be called, is:—All "gentilnes" comes from God; there were originally in heaven ten Orders of Angels bearing Coat Armour, but now only nine, Lucifer with "mylionys of aungelis" having fallen out of heaven into hell and other places. As a bondman might say that all men come from Adam, so might Lucifer say he and his angels came from heaven.

Cain, for his wickedness, was the first churl, and all his offspring were churls also by the curse of God. Seth, on the other hand, was a gentleman by his father's blessing; Noah, too, was a gentleman by nature, but of his three sons, "Sem, Cham, and Jafeth," Cham, for

his unfilial conduct, was made “ungentle.” The address of Noah to his three sons is curious, and is thus supplemented:—

“ Of the offspring of the gentleman Japhet came Abraham, Moses Aaron, and the prophets, and also the King of the right line of Mary, of whom that gentleman Jesus was born, very God and man, after his manhood King of the land of Judah and of Jews, a gentleman by his mother Mary, and Prince of Coat Armour.”

Some say that Coat Armour began at the siege of Troy, but it was of far greater antiquity than that, and was founded upon the nine Orders of Angels, who were crowned each with a diadem of precious stones—the Topaz (truth), Smaragdus (hardihood), Amethyst (chivalry), Loys (powerful), Ruby (courageous), Sapphire (wisdom), Diamond, a black stone (durable), Carbuncle (doughty and glorious). These represent Gentleman, Squire, Knight, Baron, Lord, Earl, Marquis, Duke, and Prince. Here we probably have the origin of the shape of various crowns and coronets. Everything is treated in nines, and the nine virtues and nine vices of gentlemen follow, with nine rejoicings, nine articles that every knight should keep, and nine manner of gentlemen, in which we learn that the Evangelists and Apostles were all gentlemen of the right line of that worthy conqueror, Judas Machabeus, who in course of time had fallen to labour, and so were not called gentlemen. The four doctors of the Church—St. Jerome Ambrose, Augustine, and Gregory—were also gentlemen of blood and of Coat Armour. There are nine differences of Coat Armour and nine quadrats, all of which are explained. The “ Blasyng of Arms” comes next, the preface to which is by the author, and not by the printer. It begins with the varieties of the Cross as borne in arms, each being illustrated by a rude woodcut printed in its proper colours, and the blason, or technical description of each is given in Latin, French, and English. All varieties of arms follow, with the mysteries of bends, engrail, borders, chequers, balls, cakes, rings, &c., offering but little which can be quoted, but forming an interesting and useful book of reference.



## CHAPTER IV.

### Philology.



HERE is a strongly marked individuality in the spelling throughout all the treatises in this work. If the Hunting rhymes belong to Dam Julyans, their orthography, like the prose portions, is that of the Schoolmaster, who appears to have been a North-countryman, many words leading to that conclusion. The formation of the plural by adding the letters "is" or "ys" strikes the attention at once. Thus the plural of bells is bellis; egg, eggis; vetch, fetchis; fulmert, fulmertis; hawk, hawkys; herd, herdys; person, personys, and so on. The change of a *y* at the end of a word to an *i* is common, as onli, softeli, unthrefti; and for if; algate; awth for all the; bowke; chylder; clepit; clees; knew; ken; yowre; and many others are Northern. As might be expected, many Anglo-Saxon and Anglo-Norman words now obsolete are found, such as benymme, blynne, byzete, canell, clepit, colver, dagon, gobbit, kawe, kydde, liggen, merde, nafethrils, nym,\* raton, and many others.

The following vocabulary will show the chief words in which peculiarity of spelling or dialect are noticeable:—

*alfe*, half

*and*, used for "if"

*arn*, are

*algate*, always

*appillis*, apples

*affone*, as soon

\* In the flang of thieves to *steal is to nim* at this day.

<i>awntelere</i> , antler	<i>coluer</i> , a dove	<i>fetchis</i> , vetches
<i>awth</i> , aught	<i>colode</i> , cold	<i>feldis</i> , fields
<i>awth</i> , all the	<i>cogh</i> , cough	<i>fosterys</i> , foresters
<i>barris</i> , bars	<i>contenyt</i> , contained	<i>folowys</i> , follows
<i>beelys</i> , beasts	<i>cowples</i> , couples	<i>flee</i> , flay
<i>beke</i> , beak	<i>croampe</i> , cramp	<i>forder</i> , further
<i>bellis</i> , bells	<i>currage</i> , courage	<i>forrgeet</i> , forget
<i>bene</i> , be	<i>cum</i> , <i>cumme</i> , come	<i>foslewt</i> , fost
<i>benymme</i> , take away	<i>dais</i> , days	<i>fowrith</i> , fourth
<i>blynne</i> , to cease	<i>dagon</i> , a piece	<i>fulmertis</i> , polecats
<i>boon</i> , bone	<i>dayses</i> , daisies	<i>gedder</i> , gather
<i>bodi</i> , body	<i>deeil</i> , a portion	<i>glayre</i> , white of an egg
<i>bowellis</i> , bowels	<i>defawte</i> , default	<i>gobbit</i> , piece
<i>bott</i> , but	<i>diueris</i> , divers	<i>gres</i> , grease
<i>bottre</i> , butter	<i>dookes</i> , ducks	<i>groyn</i> , grown
<i>bowke</i> , crooked	<i>doon</i> , do	<i>gyde</i> , guide
<i>bridde</i> , bird	<i>doys</i> , does	<i>habull</i> , able
<i>broght</i> , brought	<i>echeon</i> , each one	<i>hawkys</i> , hawks
<i>bysprenged</i> , sprinkled	<i>ech</i> , each	<i>hawtyn</i> , proud
<i>byzete</i> , gain	<i>eeg</i> , egg	<i>hakke</i> , hack
<i>calt</i> , called	<i>eegis</i> , eggs	<i>haare</i> , hare
<i>calde</i> , called	<i>ellis</i> , else	<i>heepis</i> , heeps
<i>cattis flesh</i> , cat's flesh	<i>elis</i> , eels	<i>hedgis</i> , hedges
<i>canell</i> , cinnamon	<i>errabull</i> , arable	<i>herdys</i> , herds
<i>callish</i> , call (imper.)	<i>efeli</i> , easily	<i>howndys</i> , hounds
<i>chycon</i> , chick	<i>eueri</i> , every	<i>hoole</i> , whole
<i>chykynnes</i> , chickens	<i>eueroſe</i> , rosewater	<i>hoo'd, holde</i> , old
<i>chooce</i> , choice	<i>euyn</i> , <i>eeuen</i> , even	<i>hoom</i> , home
<i>chylder</i> , children	<i>eyre</i> , air	<i>hudge</i> , small
<i>clepit</i> , called	<i>eygh, eyghen</i> , eye, eyes	<i>huntid</i> , hunted
<i>cloos</i> , close	<i>febulness</i> , feebleness	<i>hunterys</i> , hunters
<i>communeli</i> , commonly	<i>fechens</i> , stoats	<i>hennys</i> , hens
<i>commythe</i> , cometh	<i>faukeneris</i> , falconers	<i>huicles</i> - <i>oppon</i> <i>hir</i>
<i>cowntenansis</i> , counte-	<i>feederis</i> , <i>federes</i> ,	<i>houghis</i>
nances	feathers	<i>hanylon</i> , wiles of a fox

<i>igh, ighe, iyen</i> , eye, eyes	<i>medecyne, medesyn,</i>	<i>pennyd</i> , feathered
<i>ingraylyt</i> , engrailed	<i>medlide</i> , mingled	<i>personys</i> , persons
<i>inowgh</i> , enough	<i>meele, melis</i> , meal,	<i>pellittis</i> , pellets
<i>ilich</i> , alike	meals	<i>pike</i> , pick
<i>iren</i> , iron	<i>medill</i> , mingle	<i>proceis</i> , procefs
<i>ilke</i> , each	<i>moch</i> , much	<i>puttith</i> , putteth
<i>juse</i> , juice	<i>mony</i> , many	<i>praty</i> , pretty
<i>kawe</i> , call	<i>morothe</i> , mouth	<i>properieis</i> , properties
<i>ken</i> , know	<i>moyftour</i> , moisture	<i>quarterit</i> , quartered
<i>knaw, knawe</i> , know	<i>myddes</i> , midst	<i>rad</i> , ? afraid
<i>knottis</i> , knots	<i>mynne</i> , mine	<i>raton</i> , a rat
<i>kneys</i> , knees	<i>nasethrillis</i> , nostrils	<i>restith</i> , resteth
<i>kow</i> , cow	<i>nares</i> , nostrils	<i>rede</i> , ready
<i>knyue</i> , knife	<i>naamys</i> , names	<i>rebuket</i> , rebuked
<i>kydde</i> , known	<i>natheles</i> , nevertheless	<i>roys</i> , roes
<i>kyndeli</i> , natural	<i>neppē</i> , catmint	<i>roungeth</i>
<i>kut</i> , cut	<i>nettis</i> , nets	<i>rowse</i> , rouse
<i>layserly</i> , leisurely	<i>notabull</i> , notable	<i>saaue</i> , save
<i>lew warme</i>	<i>no moo</i> , no more	<i>serven</i> , few
<i>leppys</i> , leaps	<i>nombur</i> , number	<i>semytoyn</i> , semitone
<i>leif</i> , dear	<i>not</i> , a nut	<i>se</i> , fee
<i>leuer</i> , liver	<i>nyghtis</i> , nights	<i>shewys</i> , shows
<i>lies</i> , lice	<i>nym, nomme</i> , take,	<i>slau</i> , flow
<i>linne, lynne</i> , linen	taken	<i>snakys</i> , snakes
<i>littyl</i> , little	<i>okys</i> , oaks	<i>softeli</i> , softly
<i>liggyn</i> , lie	<i>onli</i> , only	<i>somwatt</i> , somewhat
<i>luke water</i>	<i>ony</i> , honey	<i>soore</i> , sore
<i>lyddis of the ighen</i> ,	<i>ones, onys</i> , once	<i>sowre</i> , soar
eyelids	<i>ouuen, oven</i>	<i>soper</i> , supper
<i>lymayall</i> , iron filings	<i>jon, one</i>	<i>sowkyng</i> , fucking
<i>looff</i> , loaf	<i>oppyn, open</i>	<i>sonnys</i> , sons
<i>maake</i> , make	<i>ordenatili</i>	<i>spanyellis</i> , spaniels
<i>mary</i> , marrow	<i>owte, out</i>	<i>snakys</i> , snakes
<i>markeris</i> , markers	<i>parlous, perlous</i> , peril-	<i>taake</i> , take
<i>merde</i> , dung	ous	<i>takys</i> , takes

<i>tempur</i> , temper	<i>varri rede</i> , very red	<i>wroght</i> , wrought
<i>termys</i> , <i>termis</i> , terms	<i>veri</i> , very	<i>wode</i> , <i>wold</i> , would
<i>tho</i> , <i>thei</i> , they	<i>vnthrefti</i> , unthrifthy	<i>wight</i> , swift
<i>thridde</i> , third	<i>vreyne</i> , urine	<i>woddys</i> , woods
<i>theyem</i> , them	<i>warbellith</i> , warbelleth	<i>wylis</i> , while
<i>threis</i> , thrice	<i>watt</i> , what	<i>yche</i> , each
<i>theys</i> , thighs	<i>weere</i> , where	<i>yghes</i> , eyes
<i>togeyder</i> , together	<i>weere</i> , weary	<i>yolow</i> , yellow
<i>toon</i> , two	<i>ware</i> , were	<i>yowre</i> , your
<i>tweys</i> , twice	<i>wengys</i> , wings	<i>yowris</i> , yours
<i>tymeli</i> , timely	<i>whaan</i> , when	
<i>thredis</i> , threads	<i>whote nat</i> , wot not	

We have now traced the various aspects in which this curious work may be viewed. There is not one of them that would not repay much deeper study, and the reader will, doubtless, sympathise with the writer in the wish that more could be discovered concerning the schoolmaster-printer. That his pioneer attempts to establish a printing press met with many discouragements was a matter of course; and, doubtless, he had many technical, business, and even social difficulties to overcome; for a reading public had to be created and patronage was scantly afforded. Nevertheless he struggled on for at least seven years, as we learn from the dates on his books, and whatever may have been his shortcomings, either as author or as printer, the fact of his having been one of the earliest promoters in this country of the grandest discovery which the mind of man has yet made, will unite all of us in honouring the memory and respecting the name, shadowy though it be, of the "Scole mayster of St. Albon."

WILLIAM BLADES.







**I**n so moch that gentil men and honest persones haue greete delite in haukyng and desire to haue the maner to take haukys: and also holb and in what wylde they shulde gyde theym ordynateli: and to knalb the gentil termys in communyng of theyr haukys: and to vnderstonde theyr sekeneses and enfirmitees: and also to knalbe medicines for theym accordyng. and mony notable termys that ben usyd i haukyng both of their haukys and of the fowles that their haukys shal sley. Therfore thys book fololooyng in a deli forme shalbes veri knallege of suche plesure to gentil men and psonys disposed to se it.

**T**hus is the maner to begynne to kepe halbrys: bot not all maner halbrys. bot onli Goshalbrys: and Tercelis of Goshalbrys. and sparc halbrys. and in what maner they shall be tooke.

**T**he maner to speke of hawhis fro an eeg to thei be habull to be takene.

**H**olb to speke of halbrys. first they been Egges. and afterward they bene disclosed halbrys. and communeli gof halbrys been disclosed. as sone as the chough and in some place more tymeli after the contrie is of lyte. and tymeli breddyng.

**A**nd we shall say that halbrys doon Eyez. and not brede in the wooddes. And we shall say that halbrys doon drall when they bren tymbering to thei nestes. and nott they held ne make ther nestes. And in the tyme of their loue they call. and iot haue. And we shall say that they trede.

**A**nd when they bene conclosed and begynneth to feden any thyng of lengthe unnon he kynde they wyl drall sombat out of the nest: and drall to holbis. and come agayn to ther nest

And then thay be clepit Bolbes sis **C** And after saynt Maris  
gavetis day thay wylt fley fro tree to tree . And then thay benn  
alde Bralonchers . And then it is tyme for to take hym  
**C** And . viij . myghtis be fore saynt Margaritis day e . viij .  
myghtis after is beste takyng of spare halukes .

**H**ow ye shall demeyn yow i takyng of hawkis  
& with wat instrumētis & how ye shall hide them

**T**ho so wylt take halukes he must haue nettis wlich bental :  
led wynes and tho must be made of good small threde .  
and it haue need to be dyed other green or blsse for espieng of the  
haluke . and he most take wlich hym ne dedd and threde to ensile the  
halukes that ben takien . And in this maner they must be ensiled .  
Take the ne dedd and threde : and put it thorw the ouer igh lid  
and so of that other . and make hem fast vnder the beke : that  
she se never a deett and then she is ensiled as she althe to be .  
Sum wosen to ensile hem with the ne ded igh lide a bone the beke  
on the hede almost : bot that is the dooz way For of reson the  
ouer igh lide closith more iustly then the nether be cause of the  
larenesse . When she is ensiled then bre thi haluke home on thi  
fiste and cast hit on a perch and let hit stande ther a myght and  
a day and on that other day tolwarde even . then take and cut eseli  
the thredes and take hem a way softeli for brekyng of the lyddis  
of the ighen . Then softe and faire begynne to fede her . and fair  
fede wlich her till she wylt sitte wþt upon the fist . For it is dre  
de for huryng of hit wenrys . And then thysame myght after thi

fedynge hake her att nyght and the mowle att day. Then shal  
wilt be preciounough to be reclamed. And the first meete that  
the shal eate : let it be hoot . and yeue her enough ther of

Whan yowre hawke may be draw to reclayning  
and the maner of hit dyette

**A**nd if yowre halde be harde penyd : she may be dralune  
to be reclaymed. For all the while that she is tender pen  
yd : she is not habult to be reclaymed. And if she be a Gos  
halde or **T**errest that shal be reclaymed ever fed hym with wa  
she meete at the draloyng . and at the reclaymyng . bot loke that  
hit be hooke . and in this maner washe it. Take the meat and go  
to the water and stike it copp and dolune in the water . and boun  
ge the waater olde . and feed her ther with and she be a braulen  
ther. And if it bene an Eyeesse tholb most wash the meete clen  
ner than ye doo to the braulncher . and with a linne cloth wippe it  
and feed her. And evermore the thrid day yeue her castynge When  
she is fleyng if she be a Goshalde or **T**errest in this maner :  
Take nelo blanket cloth and cut . v. pelettis therof of an in  
the longe. And take the flesh and cut . v. morcellis : and with  
a knynges pount make an hole in euery morcell . and put therin  
the pelettis of cloth . and take a fair dish with water and put  
hem therin . Then take the halde and yeue her a morcell of hooare  
meete the moltenenglyns of hulse her soop. Then take hit that  
lygh in the waat . and feed her for att nyght.

**H**ow ye shall fedre yowre hawke and to knawe  
hir infirmitie. & ther bene mony diueris of them

**I**f yollre halwe be a sparc halwe : euer fedre him with con-  
 Wasseth meet and looke that his castynge be plumage : than  
tooke that it be cleyn vnder the perch . and in the morolle ye shal  
fynde the castynge vnder the perch . and ther ye shal knowe wiche :  
ther the halwe be clene or noo . For sum gobbit wille be yollole  
and sum greene . and sum glaymous . and sum cleere And if it  
be yollole she engenderith the frounce . the Wyche is an euell that  
wille riese in the molbothe or in the cheke . And if it be greene she  
engenderith the Ry . The condicione of this euell is this . it wille  
aure in the hede and make the hede to swelle . & the ipen all glay-  
mous . and dyke . and bot it haue helpe : it wille dolme in to the  
legges . and macke the legges to rancle . and if it goo fro  
the legges in to the hede a gayne . thi halwe is bot loost . And  
if it be glaymous and roping she engenderith an euell callid the  
Cry . that is whan an halwe may not muterse

**M**erke wele yowre medicimes here folowyng

**C**A medicine for the frounce i the mouth

**T**ake a siluer spoone and put the small ende in the fyre till it  
be boote . Then let hold the halwe and oppyn his beth and brin

the soore and annoynte it with the maryng of a goose that hath  
lyne longe . and she shall be hool. And if the frunce be wey  
as greete as a note . Then ther is a grubbe ther in . and then  
thold most cutt it with a Rasute in this maner . Lette hoolde the  
haluke : and slitte ther the soore is . and thelb shalde synde ther  
as it ware the malbe of a pegeon . Take it oþre all hool . and  
take a payre of sheeris and cutt the hooles of the soore . and ma-  
ke it as fayre as ye may with a lygne cloth . and Wipe cleene  
the bloode a way . and annoynt the soore with halume . iiiij . daies  
at leue and afterward with popplyn . till it be hool.

### **C**how the frunce commyngthe.

**G**he frunce commyng whan a man fedish his haluke with  
þorke or cattiflesh . iiiij . dayes to geyder

### **C**how the Ry comingyngthe.

**H**or defalke of hooles meete this sekerne se the Ry commyng .

### **C**how the Cray commyngthe .

**G**he Cray commyng of Wash meete the Wash with the  
hole wales in the defalke of hooles meete . Also it commyngthe

of thordis the Witch ben in the flesh that the halde is fedde with  
For though thold pike the flesh never so clene . yet thold shalte  
fynde thredes ther in .

## CWhan thyng hawke shall bathe hym .

**A**nd evermore ech thridde day let thyng halde bathe hym . aft  
the somer if it be mere Water . and onys in a Weeke in Daynter  
if it be sayre Water . and not ellis . And whan thold bathes thy  
halde : ever geue her a morcell of hooche mette sondry though  
she bene a Goshalde .

## How ye may cause yowre hawke to flye with a currage in the morrow .

**I**ff ye liff that yelbre halde flye in the moroltide . fedde hit  
the nyght before with hooche mette . and Wash the same mette in  
oegyng and bryng olwt the Water clene . and that shalt make  
hit to haue lyft and currage to flie i the mordy in the best maner

## How ye shall gyde yow if yowre hawke be full goorged and ye wode soone haue a flyght .

**I**ff yelbre halde be full goozged . and that ye wold soone sypp

pon hysse a fylghte take . iij . cornes of Blakete . and put hem in a  
morcett of flesh : and geue thysame morcett lie to the halbke . and  
she wyl cast anoon all that shys bath withyn her . and anoon af-  
ter that shys bath cast Looke ye haue a morcett of boote meete  
to geue her **A**nd if yoldre halbke be ouergoorged . geue her  
thysame medesyn .

## **A** medecyne for the Ry

**T**ake dayss leuyys . and stampe hem in a morcett . and wryt-  
te olle the Yuse . and with a penne put it in the halbkes nates  
Ones or twyss than the halbke is smalle goorged . and a non  
after let hys tyre . and shy shall be hoole as a fyfth **O**r ellis  
take percelli Rootis and serue her with thyrem in thysame ma-  
ner . and when shy tyrish hole celb i yoldre honde with the tyring  
and that shall make hys boide . but it is perlous to use it often  
that the Yuse falle ner spryng m to hys yghes .

**A**lso and ge geue yoldre halbke fresh butter or the marow  
of hogges that is m the bone of the butte of porke . it shall ma-  
ke hys boide water bele at the nates . and it wyl kepe the na-  
tes oppn . but it wyl make hys halbkyng and pwoide

## **A** medecyne for the Crayp & moo folow

**T**ake and chafe with yoldre hondyng the fundement of yoldre

halke with luke water a longe tyme . and after that take the  
poudre of Sagnfrage or ellis the poudre of Reuze . and a quan-  
tite of may butter . and temper hit therwith to geder till they ben  
even medide . than putte it in a littylt bop and stoppe it faste . &  
as of thyng as yoll se de yoll bre halke an hoole meele anoynt hir  
meete a littylt therwith . and that shall make hit to loue meet  
the better for loue of the oynlement . and it shall sauue hir fro  
the Cray and from mony oder sekeneses : that gender ofte in  
an halke .

**C** Also take the hooke herte of a slyne or of a pigge and  
feede her . iiij. dayes therwith . and shal be hoole .

**C** Also take porke and beete it in hoole mylde of a cow . &  
feede the halke therwith . and that shall make hir mylde all  
the best .

**C** Also porke with the maryng of the won of the butt of porke  
shall make hir mylde & feede hir with booth to geder .

**C** Also rose hir to fresh butter and it will do the same

**C** Also oon mele or . iiij. at the most of the hooke leuer of a pig  
shall make hir to mylde . be ware ye yene hir not to grete  
a goorge therof . for it is a perious meat

**C** Also take y<sup>e</sup> white of an egge . & labur chescame i a spoge  
as weele as ye wold make glasyre for rede Ynke till it be like  
that . put chescame i a vessell . & let the meete y<sup>e</sup> shall be for hir  
fop : by a stede therin all the day be for . & at night feede hir therw<sup>e</sup>

and that the Wiche shall be for hir dynner in the morynge let it  
ly all the nyght. bot in any wyse that ye haue alþay fresh  
gleyce. and if her sedyng be woorke it is the bettir. þe is proved

## The kyndeli termis that belong to hawblis.

**I**n the begynnyng of kyndeli spach of the termys that be  
long to hawblis here ye may fynde theym **C**he first  
is holde fast at alle tyme. and specially whan she batith. It is  
calde batynge. for she batith with hir selfe most of tyn causeles  
**C**he secunde is rebate youre halwe : to yoldre fyft. & thatt  
is whan yoldre halwe batith. the leest meuyng that ye can ma-  
ke with yoldre fyft she will rebate ayn oppon yoldre fyft  
**C**he thide is feede yoldre halwe. and not gyue hir meete  
**C**he falurh is an halwe synþith. or selþith hir beke andy  
not wipith hir beke **C**he .v. youre hauke Ioukith. and not  
sleþith **C**he .vi. youre halwe pwyndith. and not pikith and  
she pwyndith not bot whan she begynnyth at hir leggys. and set  
theth moystourz like oyle. at hir taill. and balmeth hir fete &  
stabyth the fedens of hir bynges thowþ her beke. and it is  
calde the note. than as she fetchis the oyle. And ye shalþ von-  
derstonde an halwe holde not be letted of his pwynding. For  
that tyme that she pwyndith she is lykynge andy lusty. andy  
whanne she hath done she will tolde hize myghtylly.

And sum tyme yoldre haldeke colbtenansis as shē piked hir . and yet shē propnith not . and thyn ye most say shē Reformith hir fede; nis and not pikeith hir fedenis . ¶ Thē . viij . yoldre haldeke colp eth and not bekyth ¶ Thē . viii . shē colisith and not shakith her selfe ¶ Thē . ix . shē streynith and not Clithith nor Crat; chith ¶ Thē . x . shē mantellith and not stretchith whan shē put tith her leges from hir oon after an other : and hir Wynges follob after hir leggs . then shē dooth mantill hir and whan shē bath mantilled hir and bryngith booth her Wynges to geide: ue; hir backe ye shall say yoldre haldeke Warbellith hir Wynges . and that is oon terme therfore ¶ Thē . xi . ye shall say yoldre haldeke mutessith or mutith and not skylsith . ¶ Thē . xii . ye shall say cast yoldre haldeke to the perch . and not set yore te haldeke vpon the perch .

Here shal ye understande furthermore other maner of termys that belong vn to hawkis for to comende them for diuerse of theyr properteis

**E**gist ye shall say This is a say, haldeke . an hudge hauke a longe haldeke . a short thike haldeke . & say not this is a grete haldeke . also ye shall say this hauke has a large beke Or a shortt beke . and call it not bille . an hudge hede or a small he; de sayte sesoned ye shall say yoldre haldeke is full goorged and not cropped . and yoldre haldeke puttithouer and endueth . and yet shē dooth booth dyuersely .

## **C**How powre hawke puttithouer

**E**n halde pultithouer whan she remeith the merte from her go  
orze in to her bolbellis . And thus ye shalbe it bot an she  
puttithouer she trauersith with her bodi . and specialli with the  
necke : as a Crane dothe or an other brude

## **C**Whan ye shall say enduth a embowellid

**E**n halde enduth never as long as her bolbellis bene full at  
her fedyng . bot assone as she is fedde . and restith she enduthe  
littell and littell . And if her george be wide and the bolbelli any  
thyng stiffid . ye shalbe say she is embowellid and hath not fully  
enderled and as long as ye may fele any thyng in her bolbellis  
it is perrous to gyue her any merte .

## **C**Whiche well theys termys folowing

**S**ay an halde bath a long byng . a faire long taylt with vi  
barres olde . and stondith upon the . viij . This halde is entirpen  
ned That is to say whan the fedderis of the bynges bene bidden  
the body and the thighis . This halde has an hudge legge or a  
flat legge . or a collande legge . or a faire ensetid legge

## **C**To knawe the maill of an hawke

**H**awkes haue white maill . Canuas maill or Rede maill .  
And som call Rede maill Iron maill . White maill is soone kni-  
alle . Canuas maill is betwene white maill and Iron maill .  
And Iron maill is verry Rede .

## **A** Plumage . and Caste yowre hawke.

**A** N Goshawke nor a tercell in thare fore aage haue nocht  
thair m ayles named . bot it is calde their plumage . and after  
the cole . it is calde theyr Mait **A** nd if yowre halwe reward  
to any folble by countenance for to flee ther to ye shal say cast  
the halwe ther to . and not lett flither to .

## **A** Nomme or seesid .

**A** Nd if yowre halwe Nomme a folble . and the folble bre-  
ke a Way fro hir . she bath discomfet mony fedderes of the folble .  
and is brokyn a Way for m kyndeli spech ye shal say yowre hal-  
we bath Nomme or seesid a folble and not take it

## **A** Werfore an hawke is calde a Rikelere .

**A** Nd oft tyme it happith mony an halwe for egernesse When  
he shulde Nomme a folble he seesith bot the fedderis . and as ofte  
as he doos so he Rislith . therfore such halwys been called Rile-  
leres if they doo ofte so .

**H** ow ye shall naame the memberes of yowre  
hawhs in conuenient termes .

**N** O w ye shall understande the naamps off the membris  
of halwys : to begynne at his fete and goo upwarde as  
knyghettis been harnesside and armeed . & so we shal naame her

## C<sup>A</sup>Talons.

Burst the grete Clees behynde . that strenyth the bale of the  
hande . ye shall call hom Talons

## C<sup>A</sup>Pownces.

The Clees Whith i the fote ye shall call of right her Pownaces

## C<sup>A</sup>Tonge Sengles .

Bothe certaynly the Clees that are upon the medyll stretche :  
as ye shall call the loong Sengles .

## C<sup>A</sup>Pety Sengles .

And the outermost Clees ye shall call the pety Sengles

## C<sup>A</sup>The key or Closer .

Understonde ye also that the longe Senclees be calde the key  
of the fote . or the Closer . For whaþ thyng som ever it be y<sup>e</sup>  
police halwe strenyth : open that Sngle . and all the fote is op  
pen . for the strength ther of fortyfifth all the fote .

## C<sup>A</sup>Seris of Waterþ or waxy calowre .

R<sup>A</sup>nake ye : that the skynne a bolde polbre halwys legges &  
his fete . is calde : the Seris of his legges and his fete . Wher  
ther thay be Waterþ helved or of waxy calowre pololbe .

## C The Beine feder. Full Sonmyd myd . and Reclaymede .

**A**n halde bath . viij . fedoris vpon his tayle . and con pun  
a cappe fedor of the same is in the myddis . and in maner  
all that oder bene couertid vnder the same fedor . and that is cal  
led the Beine fedor of the tayle . And ther gooth blacke barris  
ouerhewe the tayle . and thos same barris shal telle yow whan  
she is full summed . or full fermyd . For whan she is full barridy  
she stondith vpon . viij . and then she is perfite rede to be Recla  
ymede .

**C**Ye shal vnderstonde that as longe as an halde stondeth  
vnder the nombre of . viij . barris . And she be in hit sore aage :  
it most be sayde that she is not full summed . for so longe she is  
hot tender . Whether she be brasnicher or Eyes .

**C**And iff she be a melbed halde . and stonde within . viij . bar  
ris . ye shal say sh she is not full fermied . for sh she is not habult to be  
Reclaymed . be cause sh she is dralle to soone olde of the melbe for  
sh she is not harde permyde . no more than a soore halde .

## C Brayles or Braylefederis . Degouted .

**T**o knalb forthermor of halbes . an halde bath long smale  
white fedoris . hangyng vnder the taylt : from his boldett dolme  
worde . and the same fedoris ye shal call the brayles or the brayle  
fedoris . And communely euery goshalde and euery tercellis  
braylis bene bysprenched with blake speckes . like Armpys . and  
for a lit that they bene accomptid never the better . Bot andy a  
spare halde be so Ermyned vpon the brayles . or a Musket . oder  
ye shal say sh she is Degouted to the vittermost brayle . and much  
it betokynis hardenes .

## **C**Brest federys . Plumage . Barbe federys . Pendaunt federys .

**T**he federys abovete the formore partys of an halooke : be called  
the brest federys . & the federys vnd the Wynges are plu mage  
The federys vnder the beke be calde the barbe federys . And the fede  
ryis that bene at the Joynte : at the halokes Kne thay stonde han  
gynge and sharpe at thendes . thos be calde the pendaunte fe  
deris .

## **C**Flagg or faggis federys .

**T**he federys at the Wynges nepte the body be calde the flaggy  
or the faggis federys .

## **C**Beine federes of the Wyng Sercell

**A**nd the long federys of the Wynges of an halooke bene calde the  
beine federys of the Wyng . And the federys that sum call the py  
nyon feder . of a noder folle . of an halooke : it is calde the Ser  
cell **C**And ye shal vnderstonde iff an halooke be in melbe y  
same sercell feder shal be the last feder that she witt cast . andy  
tylt that be cast . she is never melbed . yit it has bene seen : that  
halookes haue cast that same first as I haue herde say . bot that  
otherz Relyle is gendrall . and whan she bath cast her sercellis in  
melb . then and not erst it is tyme for to fede her with Wash me  
ete and to begynne to ensayme hire .

## **C**Ensayme

**E**nsayme of an halooke is the greate . and bot if that he take a  
Day with feddynge of Wash meete and otherlyse as it shal be

declared here after. She wylt gedder a panett Rich may be his yd  
termost confusion . and she fyle ther blith . and take blood . and  
ther sponn .

## Couertis or couert

Ther bene also federis that cloos sponn the sartellis . andy  
thos same be calde the couertis or the couert federis . and so all the  
federis be calde that bene nept over the long heme federis . andy  
the fagg federis sponn the Wynges

## Backe federis .

C The federis sponn the backe halse be called the backe federis

## Beke Clape Nares Sere

C The Beke of the halbke is the upper parte that is crooked  
C The neder parte of his beke is calde the clape of the halbke  
C The Hoolis in the halbkes beke bene callede the Nares .  
C The yoldis be thone y<sup>e</sup> Beke & y<sup>e</sup> yeghen is calde y<sup>e</sup> Sere

## Crynettis .

Ther be oon an halbke long smale blake federis : like he ;  
aboule the sere & thos same : be calde Crinettis of y<sup>e</sup> halbke

## Sore aage .

C We shal understande that the first yere of an halbke ther ;  
ther sy be calde Braboncher or Eysch . that first yere is calde  
his sore aage . and all that yere sy is calde a sore halbke . for

and she eschape that yere . With good fedynge shē is likly to endurē longe .

## To Reclayme an hawke

**I**ff ye wille Reclaym yowre haldeye ye most departe oon meile in . iii . milis . vnto tyme that shē wille come to Reclayme . and whan shē wille come to Reclayme encrece her milis every day better and better . And or shē come to the Reclame make her that shē solewe not . For thegh shē be wele Reclaymed hit may happyn that shē wille solewe : so heigh in to thē Eye . that ye shalt nether se hir nos fynde hir .

**C**And iff yowre haldeye shalt flie to the partich . looke that ye ensayne her or shē flie . Whether shē be Graloncher or Eyes Or melbed haldeye .

## Why an hawke is called an Eyes .

**A**n haldeye is calde an Eyes of hir Eggen . for an hauke that is broght vpon vnder a Bussard or a Huttocke : as mony be : hath Wateri Eggen . For whan they be disclosed and kepit in ferme tyt they be full summyd . ye shalt knalbe theym by theyr Wateri Eggen . And also hir looke wille not be so quycke as a Graloncheris is . and so be cause thē best knablage is by the Eggh . they be calde Eyeses .

**C**Ye may also knaile an Eyes. bi the palenesse of the seres  
of hir legges of the ferre ouer the heke. And also by the tayn;  
ys that be upon her taynt and her bengys. Whiche tayntys com  
for lacke of fedyng. When they be Eyes.

## **C**What a taynt is.

**T**aynt is a syng that gooth ouerborde the federis of  
the brynges. and of the taynt lyke as andi it were eekyn with  
boormys and it begynnyth first to brede at the body . in the penne  
and that same penne shal frete a sonder . and falle a way thurz;  
wth the same taynte andi then is the halwe disparaged for all  
that yere .

## **C**Medecynys to Ensayme powre hawke

**T**ake the Rode of Rasue and do it in clene Water. and lay  
thy flesh ther in . to temper a greate blyple . and yeue it to yowre  
halwe to eate . and if she eete therof . drede not bot hit shall be;  
nymme hir greate . bot wthyn . in . dayys she shall not grettely a;  
bate .

**C**Also take puliaft andi garlek and stampe it wle to ge;  
ver . and brynge odore the Juce in a dyshe . and then wete the  
flesh ther in . and fede yowre halwe therbyth . andi bot it tem;  
pur yowre halwe . that is to say ensayne yowre halwe . Wth in  
. iii . dayys . I meruelt Bot looke euery day that ye make new  
Juce and whan ye fede hir . wete yowre meete ther in .

**A**Also take shē face of percell Moris otherwile calde per  
cell y Rootis . and thos same of Isop . and Wash yowre flesh ther  
in and yowre halwe shall be Ensaymed kyndly . and no grete  
abate to the halwe .

**S**om tyme to lay thare flesh in water almost a day . and ye  
ue thosame to the halwe at soper . and that at lyth att nyght .  
to geue to hit in the mornynge . and thus to fed hem in melle or  
thay be dralben a boldke a monyng or .vi . Weekys . and to ensa  
yme theym or thay com on fist . as sone as thay cast thye re  
cest . then is shē tyme to begynne to fede hem soo .

## **H**ow yowre hawke ensaymythe

**U**nderstonde ye for certayn : that as longe as yowre halwes  
fete be blakyngh and tough : shē is full of grece . and euer as  
shē ensaymyth . hit fete will bay yowre and smothe

**H**ow ye shall gyde yow whan yowre hawke is  
redy to flie . Also ye shall say put up a partiche

**M**han ye haue ensaymed yowre halwe : and Reclaymyng  
hir . and that shē is redy to flie to the partich . ye most  
take a partich in yowre bagge . and goo in to the felde . and let

polbre spangellis synde a Coup of partrichys . and whan thay  
be put vpp . and begynne to scatre . ye most haue markeris to  
marke som of thaym . and then colople vpp polbre houndys . whan  
ye haue so coon . let sum felols of polbre puereli take the partrich  
olde of polbre bagge . and ty it by the legge : With a creunce .  
and cast it vp as high as he can . andy as soon as the halbke  
seith hit shal fli ther to . and if polbre halbke sees the parti-  
rich a woone . yeue hit a rebarde : therupon . and go after yt  
by laysonre to the partrich that he markeid and doo as I shall  
telle yow here folowyng .

**C**iff ye haue a chastised hounde : that will be rebuket : and  
is a Retriuer . vncouple him and no moo of polbre houndis .  
and goo to a sengler partrich : of the coup so sparclid . and be as  
rygh as ye can to the Risyng therof and if polbre halbke desir  
cast hit to it . and if hit take it then is polbre halbke made for  
that yere . and of the same partrich that hit fleteth . thus ye moost  
rebarde hit as it shal bith hit next folowyng .

**C**how ye shall rewarde yowre hawke .

**T**ake a knyfe and cutt the lyde and the necke from the body  
of the partrich . and stripe the skynne a way from the necke . andy  
yeue that same to the halbke . and couer the body of the solele With  
a bonett or an hatt . and lay thyssyd lyde and the necke therup-

pon . and if shē wille forsake the folde that shē plomyth on . and  
com to the celarde . then pteyli take a way the partrich . and re  
warde yollre halde with the Brayne . and the necke . Bewa  
re that shē eete no bonyngs . for that is euell to endelbe . and it  
wille make hir conlustyng : for to flye . And thus ye most serue  
hir of as many as shē steth . bot let hir celarde be the lasse .  
for ellis shē may be sone full goorged . and then shē may flye  
no more a grete while .

## C how yowre hawke shall Reioysse .

**H**ond whan yollre halde hath floyne a folde . and is de  
warded as I haue soyde . let hir not flee in no whise tyll y<sup>e</sup> shē  
haue Reiosed hir . that is to say . tyll shē haue seded . or snyded  
her heke . or ellys rollsed her . and whan shē hath done any of  
theys . or all . go and rettue moo and shē wille hym plente .

**W**han yowre hawke hath nomme a fowle how  
ye shall do that ye rebuke not the hawke .

**T**rene wele oon thyng . and beware therof . whan yollre hau  
ke hath nomme a partrich . stonde a goo de way of . and come  
not to nygh her . and dryue a way yollre houndys . for rebu  
kyng of hir . for many haldeys loue noon houndys . and also

many hollondys witt bengmme theym theyte gamme from thz  
fote . and that is parlous . and whiles yowre halwe plumith  
cumme sofeely tolbarde hiz . alway nere andy nere . and if she  
leue plumping . and loke oppon yow . stonde stylt and cherke  
hiz . and whistylt hiz . tytt she plume apon . and thus serue hiz  
tytt ye be right nere hiz . Then softe and lassely : falle oppon  
yowre knegs . andy preuely . While she plumpyth sett yowre honde  
and be fure of the gesse . and than ye may gyde all thyng as ye  
wytt . and if ye doo the contrary : she wytt for feare carry his  
game or let it go quylke . and that is bot losse to yow andy  
yowre halwe also .

## A medecyne for to make an hawke to cast that is a coineryd with casting with in her body

**T**ake the Juce of Salandyne . and wetz a morcell of flesh  
therm . the molumentance of a Noste . and yeue that morcell  
to the halwe . and that shal make hiz for to cast his olde cast  
thyng . and the halwe shal be safe .

## C A medecyne for an hawke that will soure

**W**ash the flesh that yowre halwe shal be fedde with : in ye  
Juce of fenell . and that shal take awaie that pride from hiz  
and make hiz to leue his solvynge whether she be lene or fatte .

And mony tyme an halbbe witt sorre whan she lackyth ha-  
thyng.

## A medecyne for an hawke that is lowse.

Take quycche siluer and put it in a bassien of brasse. and  
do ther to saladyne: and ashys. and medyll it wile to geder.  
tylt all the quycche siluer be dede. and medyll thereto fat of bon-  
nys. and anoynte the halcke therwith. and hang it aboule his  
necke tylt it salt a day. and that shal flee the lies.

## Also polbore of orpement blollen vpon an halbbe: With a panne shal flee the lies.

Also take a dragon or pece of Rough blanket vnschorowen  
and holde it to the fire. vnto tyme it be thowghh oldte warme  
and wrappe the halcke therin. and than holde hit softely and  
styly. for hurtyng in polbore hondys. and the vermyne witt cre-  
pe in to the cloth.

Also holde hit in the sonne in a fayre day. & ye shal se  
the vermyne crepe oldte vpon her fedoris. then take a knyfe and  
wete the oon side of the blade therof wth polbore moldeth. & alday  
as they appere lay the wete side of the knyfe to theym. and they  
wilt cleue ther to. and than ye may flee theym.

## **C** The opynyon of Ostregiers.

**A** fter the opynyon of many Ostregiers: and ye fede yowre  
wylde contynually with swerde with lynes. with sythes. Or  
especially bere his mech in Rayeny Leder. thay shal be losse.

## **C** Ostregeris. Speruiteris. Faulkenetis.

**N**old be cause I speke of Ostregeris: ye shal consideronde  
that thay be calde Ostregeris that kepe Goshawkes. or Ter-  
cellis. and tho that kepe Sparhawkys and musketys ben cal-  
led Speruiteris. and keperis of all other halwkyss ben callide  
Faukenetis.

## **C** The length of the Gesse. Lewnes. Tyret- tes. and how they be fastined. & Bewettis

**H**alwkyss haue aboufe thy Legges Gesse made of Leder most  
commynly. som of silke. Which shulde be no lenger bot that the kn-  
ottis of thyrm shulde appere in myddys of the leste honde: betwe  
ne the longe synge and the leche synge. be cause the lebnes  
shulde be fastened to thyrm. With a payre of tyrettis. Which tyret-  
tes shuld rest vpon the lebnes. and not vpon the gesses. for  
hengyng and fastenyng vpon trees wher she flyeth. and the  
saame lebnes. yolo shal fastyn than a dolore yllyll  
synge slackely. in compasyng the saame in . iiiij . ox . x .

folde . as a bold styring unoccupiede and sy lettres serue to kepe  
her from byndyng whan sy backs **C** Also thy same letheris  
that be putt in hir bellis : to be fastyned a bout hir leggys ye  
shalt calle **G**edrettis .

## **C**reaunce .

**A**lso ye shal call sy long lyne that ye do cast youre halwe  
a Reclayn whith : yowre Creaunce . What so euer it be .

## **A** medecyne for an hawke that will cast flesh

**P**utt the flesch that yoll re halwe shal eese : in fayre waler .  
and se de her therwirth . ij . dayes . and sy shall holde hir flesch at  
the best .

## **A** medecyne for an hawke that has lost here courage .

**A**n halwe that hath loose hir courage : a man may knowe  
if he wille take good heire . For siche is hir maner . Whan sy  
is cast to a folde . sy fleeth a waywarde as thogh sy knewe  
not the folde . O: ellis sy wille flee a littyit way after . and  
a noon sy yaueth it opp . and for such an halwe thys is a  
goode medecyn .

**C**Take Oyle of spayne and temper it with clere Wyne . and  
With the yolkie of an ege and put therin lefe . and therof yeue  
to yoldre baldre . v. mortellis . and then set her in the sonne . and  
at even feede her with an olde hole coluer . and if ye feede her thus  
in tymys that baldre was never so lusty nor so Ioly before . as  
she will be after and come to hit oldne urege .

**C**Othir make poudre of mecles that stynketh , and putt the  
poudre on the flesch of a pecke and meditt the blode of the pecke  
among the poudre . and make her to eate the flesch .

**A**m edecyne that an hawke shall not lie i mew  
for vnlustynesse .

**T**ake ferme Rotis that growith on an Oke . and oke appil  
lis and make Iuce of theym . and lete her flesch therin . & feede  
the baldre . iiij. tymys or . viij. and that shal make her to leue that

**C**A medicin for an hawke that hath the teyne

**H**en baldre that hath the teyne a man may sone knall if he take  
hem . for this is his maner She will pante more for oon batynge  
then an other for . iiiij . & if she shulde die a lityll while she shuld  
almost lese her breth . whether she be fatte or lone . and alway she  
maketh hym cheare . and for that this is the medycyne .

**T**ake a quantite of the Redenesse of hafett Bich the poudre  
of Rasne and peper and somwhat of gynger . and make the  
reos in fresh greece iij. pelletys and holde the holde to the fire  
andy when she felith the hete make her to swalowe the . ij pel  
letys by strength . and knypte fast her biske that she cast it not  
olote and do so thries . and she shall be safe .

**A**Also take Rasne and Rubarbe . and grynde it to gedre .  
and make Iuce therof and bete the flesh therin . and geue it  
her to eate . and she shall be hooft .

**A**Also take alisalbndre and the Roote of prima rose and  
the Roote of gro gnauteles and seeth all in the botte of a korb  
and geue her . ij morcellis every day vnto the tyme that she  
be hooft . and looke that she be woonde when ye geue her the me  
decyne .

## How a man shal take an hawke fro the Exere

**W**ho so takys an hawke from the Exerer : hym behoueth  
to doo bisely . in bringyngh hym easeli . and to kepe him  
welle from colde . and from hurcynge of ther bonyes . for they  
be full tendre . and they most haue greate rest . and they may  
not haue stynkyng & filthy Exre bot as clene as can be may  
be thought . and evermore geue him clene meat . and hote . &  
a lityll & oftyng . & change oftyng ther meat . bot loke it be hot

and cutt her meeete in to smale morcellis . for thay shulde nocht  
tyre on bonys tyll they myght flie . Then after whan she begyneth  
to penne . and plumpeth . and spalchith and pikith her selfe .  
Putt her in a cloose warme place . that no fulmetis nor fesoates  
cheus . ne other vermyl com nocht in to her . and let the place be  
secure from wynde and rayne . and then she will preue her selfe  
and euer more peue her good hote meetys . For it is better to  
a man to fede his hawke while she is tendre with hooche meatis .  
to make her good with somme cost . then to fede her with euer  
meatis to make her vntrewest with lyght cost . **C**And looke  
whan she begynneth to ferme then geue her bathyng .

**H** medecyne for wormys in an hawke whiche se  
henesse is called the Fylaundris .

**M**erke wele this sebenesse and beware therof . This is the  
medecyne therfore . ye shal take an herbe that is called Neppe  
and putt it in a small gut of a Capon or of an henne . and  
knyst it with a thred . and let her Resaue it hooch . and she  
shall be hooch and saafe **C**Thus ye shal knalwe whan  
your hawke hath wormys in his wolle . Looke whan she bath  
castyng and ye shal fynde oon or . n . a wolle her castyng pla  
ce iff she haue ony .

**C**A medecyne for an hawke that castys wor  
mys at the foundement what wormis that ther be

**T**ake the lymayn of Iren : g medyst it w<sup>e</sup> flesh of porke &

yeue it to ye hauke . iiij . dayes for to herte . and she shall be hooft

**A** medecyne for an hawke that hath a sekenesse  
the whiche is called the aggresteyne .

**W**hen ye se godre halwe herte his sele with his gheke . and  
pullygh her tangit . then she bath the aggresteyne . For this selenn  
nesse take Merde of a dove . and of a shewe . and of an allob :  
and stonge rognegre : and do all softely in a bofyn of brasse . &  
Medyll hym well to geder : to serue ij . dayes after . and yeue  
her flesch of a coluer with ony and with polder of peper . and  
set her in a derke place . andy doo so . iij . dayes . and When ye see  
Melo fedetis in the tangit . Wash her with eweose . and she shall  
be hooft andy soafe .

**A** medecyne for an hawke that hath the cro  
ampe in hir wynges and how it cumyngh .

**E**n this Crampe take a syghte looff of brede sunnibat colder  
then it commyth olde of the ouren . and let holde the halwe soof  
tely for hurtyng . and but the loofe almosth thowlb olde . and  
display the wynges esely . and holde it betwene the . iiij . partes of  
the loofe . andy let it be holde so . the space of alse a quarter  
of an houre . andy she shall be hooft .

**C**h The Crampe commyth to an halwe with takynge of cos  
lode in hir yoldethe . Therfore it is goode for an halwe to ke  
p his Warme : yonge and hooft . and this medecyne is good  
at all tymes for his Whether she be yonge or holde .

**H**e not an hawke be put in mew to late bot in  
this maner as it foloweth. if ye loue your hawke

**I**ff ye loue Bele yowre halwe. kepe her Bele. and put her  
nott late in melbe. for who so for couetesnese of fleng leses the  
tyme of his halwe melodyng. and witholdis her to long therfro  
he may after putt her i melbe at auenture. for then a parte of her  
melodyng tyme is past. **C**Who so puttyth his halwe in melbe  
in the begynnyng of Lentyn. if she be kept as she alvþ to be she  
shall be mewed. in the begynnyng of Auguste.

**C**how ye shall dispose and ordain yowre mewe

**S**ett and dispose yowre melbe. in this maner so. that no be  
sett ner puleatt ner non other vermyn entre ther to ther none  
bynde. ner no grate colde ther that it be ouer hote. Let that on  
parte of the melbe be turned to warde the sonne. so that in the mo  
ost parte of the day : the sonne may come inn.

**C**Also ye most se that she be not auerped ner greued with  
mych noyse. ner with song of men. and that no manner folkes  
come to hir. bot only he that fedyng hir.

**C**It behouþþ that yowre halwe haue a fedyng stokke in hir  
melbe. and a longe styring tyed thereto : to fastyn hir mete with  
for ellis shal carp it a boþte the hous. and soyle it with dust  
And perauenture shal hyde it till it stynke. and then fede  
yonpon it. and that myght be hir deth. and therfor when it is  
bonyd to the sayd fedyng stocke. shal nether at the fedyng  
ner at the tþryng ne at the lightyng ne at the Rysyng hurte  
hir selfe. And whan shal bath fedde. take a way the remenant  
if any leue. and in anywyse that shal haue clene mete. and all  
mych meatt fresh. for of stale metis and euell metis shal  
engender mony sekeneses. **C**And loke ye go never to yowre

meles bot whan ye shall geue yowre haldeke meete . or ellis to brayng water to bathe her . and suffyng no Rayn to weete her at no tyme . and ye may . and as for her bathyng that shall no thig hymdez her melbyng .

**C** The maner how a man shall put an hawke in to newe . and that is to be wele rooted .

**O**ff oon thyng ye most before her self shal haue any sekenes that ye make her hole or ye put her in melbe . for as I understande a sche haldeke shall never melb well . for though she mewe shal not endure bot while she is grete and fatte . for at the abatynge of her estate shal may no lenger endure .

**C** Some tyme with out any medicyne many men drayson haue thay myght melb ther haldekes for sum put haldekes in melb at high estate . and sum whan thay be right low . and sum whan thay be full . and sum whan they be Empty and lene . and sum whan thay be myserabell lene . Bot therof it is no force . iff she be hole Neuertheles . I shall say myn aduyce as I haue sene & learned .

**W**ho so puttith a Goshaldeke or a Cercest or a spere haldeke in to melb so high that shal may be no higher . shal will holde her longe in the poynct : or that shal lese or lente any fedoris . And who so puttith her in melb lene . it will be long or shal be remounted and who so puttith her in melb to hungry and to lene : if shal haue meat at her will shal exete to moch . be cause of hunger . and paure shal may be dede her by . as hath ofte beene

**B**ot who so will that an haldeke endure and melb kyndly . myn councell it is that shal be not to high noder to lode . noder in gre

the destresse of hunger. bot like as sh<sup>e</sup> wolde flee best then take he de  
the first day of to moch eetynge. vnto tyme that sh<sup>e</sup> be stalonched  
and after that a man may take her siche mete as I shal tell mo  
re playnly here after.

## In what maner and how a man shall feede his hawke in innewe.

Ioke with what meetis sh<sup>e</sup> bath bene most sood to be fedde and  
feede her therwith. viij. dais contynually. and tho. viij. dais ye  
ue her birdis Inwol. both mowle and ewyn. and let her plomme  
roppon hem Wele. and take castynge of the plomage. and that sh<sup>e</sup>  
all talabon her Wele. and cause her to haue goode appetite and  
it shal clese Wele her bolbillis and whan sh<sup>e</sup> is wecht cleased.  
ye may geue her what meete that ye will so it be clene and fresh

C<sup>t</sup> Bot the besle mete to make an halooke to melbe moost sone  
Byth olde any metecyne is the fleshe of a kynde and of a yong  
S<sup>t</sup>banne and of a chikyn and espeiall Ratonyf flesh so ther  
be not assaughte Moon like to hit and of a yong goos for such  
mete is hote of it selfe.

C<sup>t</sup> And take gobittis of grete fresh Elis. and specialli the col  
pon next the Nauell. and Wele it in hote blode of moton it is  
goode to make her to melde. bot specialli it shal make her bright  
after her soore aage

C<sup>t</sup> Thes sayd fleshes bene goode to melbe an halooke: and to  
kepe her in state bot loke sh<sup>e</sup> haue good plente every day. so that  
she Rather leue parte then lacke any. and euery iij. day let her  
with if sh<sup>e</sup> lyf

**C**And whan she wapith rygh ferme yeue hir hemys and  
facy wrike and of an hounde is passing good.

**C**An halwe is never full ferme nor tedy for to dralbe obte  
of melo vnto tyme his fercest be full grodyn . yet haue I sene sū  
folkyng take hem obte of melo whan ths farcest were bot halfe i  
spunge . and that is porlous . for they are not then hude pen-  
ned .

**C**Som folkyng risen whan an halwe has cast hir farcess to  
begynne and wash hir meete . and fede hir so in melo with wash  
meete a monyng or . vii . weekys or euer thay dralbe thaym .

**C**Bot of all fleshes after shē is melbed . a resonable george  
of an hooche haire is best . and also of a crowbe hooche . bot it  
moste be wash in water : and then it is the better . For that  
wilt not berymmen hem hastely ther grece . ner put hem in no  
greate febulnes · for it durith sumwhat with hir .

**C**To make an hawke to mew tymeli with out  
any hurtynge of hir .

**D**ob I shall tell yoll veray true medecynes for to melbe an  
halwe hastely that ye shall beleue for troulthe and ye witt as-  
sop thyrm .

**C**There be in woodys or in ledgis wormys calcedders that  
ben redde of nature · and he is calde lepa . and also ther be sna-  
kys of the same kynde . and they be verri bitter . Take . iiij . oz . ij  
of thyrm and syngre of ther ledges and therodys of therz taylis .  
Then take a newe erthen pot : that was never used . and cut hem

i to smal gobetys . and put thos same therin . and let hem se ;  
the stronglich . a grete while . at good layser . and let the pot be  
couered . that no ayre com obte of it ner no breth and let it se  
the so long that the saame colpons seth to grecce . then cast it out  
and doo a way the bonis . and geder the grecce . and put it in a cle  
ne vessell . and as oft as ye fede yoldre halwe : anoyt her meete  
therin . and let hir ete as moch as shy wilst . and that meete shal  
melbe her at yoldre albone wilst .

## **A** nother medecyne .

**T**ake Whete : and put it in the brothe that shederis were so :  
then in . and when ye se the Whete begynnyng to cleue : take it out  
and fede hennys or chylernnes therwith . and fede yoldre halwe  
with thos same polayn .

**W**ho so will that an hawke mewe not nor fall  
noon of his fedderis . therfore here is a medecyne

**T**ake polader of Canest . and the Juce of franke cost and  
the Juce of parange . and take morcellis of flesh . iiij . or . viii . if  
ye lust and beete them therin . and make the halwe to swalow  
hem and serue hir so mony tymys .

**T**Also take the skynne of a snake or of an Edder . and cut  
it in to smale peces . and temper it with hooche blode : and cause  
yoldre halwe of syn tyne to fede therof and shal not melbe .

## C For the gowte in the throte .

When ye se yoldre halde blacke of syn tyme : and that it com  
mys of no batynge . ye may be surc ffor bath the golde in the throte  
And for that Take the blode of a peacock . and Encense myrra ;  
holanana . and clabis of gelofre . and canell and gynger . and  
take of att thes eynlich and medyll hem With peacockys blo-  
de and sett it tytt it be thycke . and therof make morcellis .  
and geue the halde therof everi day . at mydmorene and att  
Moone .

## B O i the gowte in the hede and i the Raynes.

When ye se yoldre halde may not endel her meete nor remou-  
te her astate . she hath the golde in the hede and in the Ray-  
nes .

C Take Mompan̄ oderwise called momph̄ . among spota-  
ties ye may haue it . and the skynne of an haire and geue it to  
yoldre halde to erie . iij . tymes With the flesh of a cat . and iff  
she may holde that meatte she shalbe safare .

## C A medecyne for a sekerneſſe called the fallera

When ye ſe that yoldre halde clees Way White : then ſhe has  
the fallera . For this ſekenes take a blacke ſnake . and cutte a  
Way the hede . and the taylt . and take the myddyll . and fry it in  
an erthyn pote . and take the grece and ſauie it . and anoynt  
the fleſh of a peacock therwith and geue it to the halde ſo to

eete viii. dayes : and ye haue no peoke heve hir flesch of a colu  
and after the viii. dayes . heve hir a chelyn . and Wash it a litel  
and heue it hir to eete . and take the tenderest . of the brest With  
the ffreshest bone and let hir eete it . and if shē amende any thē  
yng shē shall be hōlē .

### A medecyne for the crampe in the thigh in the legge and in the fote of an hawkē .

Whē yē se you're haule lay hir oon fote vpon her oder fote . shē  
is take With the crampe . Then dralbe hir blode vpon the fote  
þt lies vpon that other fote . and vpon the legge also . and  
shē shall be hōle .

### C for the Cogh or the poole .

Take polvore of ~~Gays~~ : and put it vpon the flesch of a Col  
uer : and heue it ofte to polvore halwe and With olde dolde shē  
shall be hōle .

### C A medecyne for the podagre .

Whē polvore halwes fete be swollyn shē bath the podagre then  
Take fresh may butter and as moch of Oylt of olyf and of  
alyn . and charfe it vsele to gedre at the fere and make shē  
of anoyntement . and anoynt the fete . iiiij. dayes . and set hir in  
the sonne . and heue hir flesch of a cat . and if that auaylt noot  
Seth the cuttyng of a syne . and Brappe it a bolde the swel-  
lyng . and let hir sit vpon a colde stone and anoynt hir With  
butter or freshe greece . and shē shall be hōlē .

**A** medecyne for a sekenes within the body of  
an hauke and it shewith not outwardly how she  
shall be holpen and in what maner .

**A** man moy knal by the chere . and vngladnes of an hab :  
ke this infirmyte bot yet it is straunge to knalve : thyngys  
that a man may not se : in what sekenes and what maner they  
be grynde and specialli whan a man shote not wherof it com ;  
myght **C** fede yollure halbre hele upon an henne and then ma  
ke her to fast . ii . days after : to awarde hele hit wollellis . To  
thryd day take honig so den and sytl hit body full . and bynde hit  
wike that sh cast it not olde of hit body and than set hit olde  
in the sonne . and whan it dralbith towarde even fed hit with  
an hooche folle . for as I here my maystris say and she be noott  
host herof . luke neuer oder medecyne .

**E**or the passion that Goshawhis haue fastynge

**C**ake the Rose of smale Ryfhes . and make Juce of  
hem and weete yollure flesh theron and make her to eate it .

**C**for hawkis that ben wonded .

**G**ake a way the feddis abbor the wonde and take the White  
of an Egge and Oyle of Olyue . and meditt it to geder . and  
anoynce the wonde and kepe hit with White Wyne . vnto tyme ye se  
de flesh . and then put in the wonde Escoupe salt vnto tyme the

rete flesh be wastye. after take erence : and cene as myche of  
that oon as of that oder . medell it in fere . and whan ye wille a ;  
noynt the soore therre yowre oyntement and anoynt it with a pen :  
tylt the tyme the skynne grow ayenme . and if ye se dece flesh ther  
on : and wolt haue it away Take venecrate & then anoynt it  
with this Oyntement offorsayed and sye shal be hool

## ¶ A medecine for an hauke that has the arretik

Whan ye se yowre halwe sat a wolle the herte knust it for trou  
th she hath the arretik. Therfore do let hir blode in the Origynal  
ayne . and after that geue hir a frogge for to eate . & she shal  
be hool

## A medecine for an hauke comred i the bowillis

Whan yowre halwe is Encombred in the bowillis ye shal le  
nake it by hir eyghes . for hir Eighen wille be derke and she wille  
looke congladly and hir metessing wille desole her foundement .  
Then take the halwes meete and anoynt it with polvde of can  
nel and geue it hir to eate . and she shal be hool .

## ¶ A medecyne for an hauke that has the goute

Reade yowre halwe with an Ichyn onys or slypes . & it shal  
helpe hir :

**A** A medecyne for an hawke that hath mites .

**T**ake the Juce of Wormelbode and put it ther thay be and ther  
shalt dye .

**A** That an hauke use hit craft all the seson to  
flye or lefe .

**T**hen ye go to the feld in the latter ende of halleyng and des-  
ire that yoldore hawke shal rose hit crafte . Do to hit in this ma-  
ner let hit sle a folde . and let hit plym upon it as moch as  
the witt . and whan hit bath plymmed enough go to hit softly  
for fraying . and welbarde hit on the folde . and after that ye  
may cast hit on a perch . & aswelt hit may rose hit craft so . as  
that hit stell al the yere .

**A** A medecyne for an hauke that has the croon

**A** Anoynt hit fundement with Oyl . and put the powder of  
alpm with an hole scrolle .

**A** Also take an herbe callid cristis larder . & anoynt hit mol-  
the withyn and hit shal be holt .

**A** Also take smale flambe rotis and polipodi and the cornes  
of sporge and grinde it well and seeth it in butter . and dralbe  
it thorough a clooth . and make therof . ij . pelletis of the grette-  
nes of a Not . and put it in hit moloth in the morolbide . and lo-  
ke that hit be wold . and then set hit fast till euengong . and sede  
hit littill and littill . and hit shal be holt .

## A medecyne for verynyn.

Take the Juce of the Rootes of ffeneest . and do it whare the vermyn be . and thay shalst dye .

## A medecine for the Reume that hauhis haue

Whan ye se yoldre hauke cloose her Eglen . and shakith hir heade . then bath she sy Reume in the heade . Therfore geue hir larde of a gote the first day and the secunde geue hir epatike with the ffrish of a chypon and she shalst be hooft .

## A medecyne for hauhis that bene dry and de syre to drynke , to kepe hem moist in kynde .

T Take the Juce of haerhounde and Beete thyng baldwyns mele therin . and fede her therwith onys or cloues . and she shalst be hooft .

## B or lehnes that hauhis haue i their Entrellis .

All baldwe that is seke withyn thentraples : is of an oder array then moder sekeneses . for if she holde not hir messe bot cast it . that is tokyn of the foule glet . for surfete of federais that be geuen to thauhers in theyr yoldre and afterwarde whan they come unto travaylt . and ben anoyde of the Reuer then they waper shal to flye and desire for to rest . and whan thauke is upon hir pech then shal she sleep for to putouez . at thentraples

and if she holde flesch any while in hir goorge : it will loke as  
it wox sooden and when she is waked she assayeth to put ouer  
ot thentryng . and it is agluttide and colded : With th glett y<sup>e</sup>  
she bath engenderid . and if she shulde ashape she most put ouer .  
or ellis she most dye . or cast it and if she cast it she may be hole  
pe with the medecyne .

## A medeeyne for the Entreyllis .

**T**ake yolkys of Egges ralbe . and when they be wele beaten  
to geder . put thereto spamyng solte . and as mych hony thereto . &  
Beate therin thy fleshe . and se de thy halbke . iii . dayes therwith  
and if she make daunger to eate it . let holde thy halbke . and  
make hir to swalow . iiij . or . vij . morcellis in a day . and securli  
she shall be hooft **N**yt I shall say to yold a noder thyng . ta  
ke hony at the chouungynge of the moon . and a kene nettynt and  
therof make small polodre and when it is well gewonde . take y<sup>e</sup>  
breast boon of an hemme . and a noder of a coher . and hakke it  
With a knyfe . and do alay the skynne . and do theron the polodre  
and all hooft with the polodre fede hir . and do so thries . and  
she shall be hooft .

## A for sekenes of Swellyng .

**I**ff an wicked felon be swolbyn in sich a maner y<sup>e</sup> a man  
may brent it . that the halbke shall nos dye thus a man may hel  
pe his strongly . and lengthe his lyfe . bot the halbke will be ve  
ry eeger and gleetous of the sekenes . and therfor ye moost

Take the Rose of comfory and sugre iliche mych . and sethe it in fresh gare with the thridde parte of hony . and then draue it thorough a sayre clooth . and oft geue it to the hauke and she shall amende .

## **F**or blaynia i haukes monthes cald frounches

Off the frounches it is dredde for halbes . for it is a noyus sakenes . and dralith hir to deth . and with holdeth hir strengthe . for men sayn that it commyng of colde . For colde doth halbes mych harme . and makyngh flesome falle olde of the brayne & the Eggen witt swest and emperye in her heade . and bot she haue hasteli helpe it witt stoppe hir nase thrillis . And therfor Take Fenell Maryatt and Rensis ilich moch . and sethe it & deale it thorough a cloth . and oderableys . Wash her heade therwile and put som in the Roofe of her mouth . and she shall be safte

## **A** medicine for an hauke that castis his flesh

Take his fleshe in sarsouit or ellis seeth Rasue in Water and put her fleshe therin : When it boyleth .

## **A** medecyne for the Reume clepid Agrum

When thou seest thy hauke upon his mouth and his chekis blodded . then she hath thys sakenes calde Agrum . Therfor take a neddit of siluer and hote it i the fire . and brymme the Cleverellis thorough olde . then anoynt it with oyle of Olyff .

## **C** For to make an hawke grete and fasse .

**T**ake a quantyte of porke and ony and butter Iliche my; che and porgede grece and do a Way the skynne . and sethe hem to geder . and annoynt thy flesþ therim . and se de yolbre halbke therwith . and she shall encrece myghtely . Ellis take the syn ges of an Eued . and se de his and kepe his from trauell and so ofte though the eued be never so fatte . and if yolbre halbke be not passing fat within a forcenet bondre I thynke .

## **C** For booches that growe in an hawkis Iowe

**R**utt theys wotches with an knyfe . and let olbre the mater of theym . and after clese theym clene with a syluer spone or ellis fille the hooft with a polvore of anemelit I brent . and soppon that polvore do a littill laze : that is reſide and so it will a Way .

**H**ere is a goode medecyne for an hawke that wyl not coom to Reclayme .

**C** Take fresh butter and put thereto sugre and put it in a cle ne cloth and Reclayme her to that and kepe it in a box in you re bagge .

**A** medecyne for hawkis that bene Refreynd .

**W**hen ye se yolbre halbke Mesyng and Castyng that thorugh her Mostallus or his nares then dolsteles she is Refrained .

**F**or that sekenes : take ye greynes of shaffelegre and of pizer and grynde it well . and temper it with strong wyne negre and put in hir Nares and in the Rooff of hir mouth and poure hir flesh to eete . and sy shall be saaff .

## **A** medecyne for hawkys that haue paine in theyr croupes .

**C**ome shal take fayre Morsham and poudre of geleſie : and meddell it to gedre . and poure it to polbre halbke to eete . and if she holde it past the secunde day after . sy shall be hoole .

## **A** medecyne for the stoone in the fundement

**C**When polbre halbke may not metese then she bathe thair sekenes calde the stoon . And for this sekenes : ye shal take the heyt of a floyne and the greece of a floyne . and cutt it with the flesh of the heyt and sy shall be holpe .

## **C**A medecyne for the dry Frounce .

**E**Or thy sekenes take the Roote of spallipody that groweth upon Okys . and sett it a grete while then take it fro the fire and let it stonde and lay lebb Warme . then Wash polbre flesh therin . and feede polbre halbke . ij . tymes . and she shall be hoole

## **C**A medecyne for wormys called anguelli s

**T**ake pressure made of a lombe that has borne in contyme & drache therof . ij . morcellis and put it in a gut of a coluer

and se de her therwith and take the halwe le boide When ye peue  
her thyng medecyne.

**C** Also take Juce of dragonys and put full the gut of a pe;  
geon and then cut it and deporte it as the halwe may ouerisbo  
lode it . and put it in his body . and knyght his beke for castynge

**C** Also peue her the ballockye of a Buc as hote as they  
ben cut odore . and make polodore of the pyntylt and cast it vpon  
the flesh of a Cat . and se de her therwith & she shal be hool.

**A**n hawke Tyrith . Fedith . Goorgith .  
Bekith . Rousith . Enduyth . Ahetith .  
Derchith . Joyith . Puttihouer . Prognith .  
Plommyth . She warbullith . and mantellith .

**S**he tytith vpon Rumpys . She fedith on alle maner of  
fleſh . She goorgith When ſhe fillith her george with meete .  
She bekyth When ſhe ſelvith : that is to ſay ſhe byþith her beke .  
She Rousith When ſhe ſhalith alle her fedoris and her body to  
gedre . She Enduyth When her meete in her bellys falle to di  
gention . She mutith When ſhe auoydith her orde . She perchith  
When ſhe ſtondyth on any maner bolde or perch . She Joykith  
When ſhe ſlepith . She puttihouer When ſhe Euordith her meete  
olore of her george in to her warbillis . She prognith When ſhe ſet  
dryth oyle with her beke ou her tayle and anoyntith her ſet &  
her fedoris . She plommyth When ſhe pullith fedoris of any folble

or of any other thyngs and castys hem from her. She Warbelyth  
When she dwelvith bothe her wyngys ouer the myddys of her booke.  
and ther they mete bothe and softely shalysth them. and let hem  
fall ayn. And she mantyllith When she stretchith her oon wyng  
a long after her lege. and after Warde that other wyng. and  
moost complyx she doth that affore or she Warbelyth hir.

## C The namys of a Spare hawke as Ostrigers and Sparuiters haue determined

**T**her is a question axyd whether a man shalst call a spare  
halwe Or a spete halwe Or an aspete halwe. & Ostrigars.  
and also Sparuiters: sayen she may be callid all. iij.  
Namys. for thes resonys. She may be callid a Spete halwe  
for of all the halwys that ther be she is moost spete. that is to  
say moost tendre to kepe. for she leest myndyng and mynsenten  
dyng sleth.

**C** Also she may be calde an aspete halwe of sharpnesse  
of hir corage. and of hir lokynge quickly. and also of her fleyng  
For she is moost asper and sharpe in all thyng that belong  
vnto hir of any other halwys

**C** She may be also callid a spare halwe for. iiij. Resones. one  
is she sparid goshalwys and tercellys bothe. siche as ben in  
their soore auge. vnto tyme they may be Reclaynyd. and ma  
de redy to fleye. as Goshalwys and tercellys that be not ful  
ly melved: vnto tyme they may be cleare ensaynyd and redy to  
fleye. for all the whyle they bene conabult. the spare halwe occu  
pithe thyseson. and sleth the partrich Becht. that is to say froom  
saynt Margaritus day vnto it be lammas. and so forth in the  
yeare.

**C** And she wylt flee Becht yong fesaldonies: yong hech cockys

In the begynnyng of the vere. And after Michelmas Whan par; eekes passe her daunger I haue seen hem made sum to sle the pie sum to sle the Celi spon the Reuer: at the Jutte sume to sle the Wodecock and sum for the blacke bude and the thustre.

**C**he Wodecock is comboroue to sle: bot if ther be crafte ther force Whan ye come to a Wode or a quech of bushus. cast yowre sparcialeake in to a tre and beete the bushes then and if any Wodecock arise she will be fure therof. **C**we most first make her to a folde cast vp olde of the bushes. and yowre haloke most sit on looste as ye make her to a partriche. Also as I sayde ye may call her a sparre haloke: for an oder cause. for and ther ther a shipe fraught full of halokes. and no thyng ellis. and ther we re a sparre haloke among thaym ther shuld no custome be payd be cause of her. And so for the most comune name thay be calde sparre halokes for the resonas aforesaid.

**A**n hawke flieth to the vew to the Beke. or to the Tolle. No Crepe Querre fer Jutty ne

**A**ll haloke flieth to the Ryuer dyuersis ways. and sle; the the folde dyuerli. That is to say she flieth to the feld or to the beke. or to the toll. & all is bot oon. as ye shalbe bere after She flieth also to the quare: to the crepe. and no mo ways but thoos. in. And she mynnyng the folde at the fer Jutty or at the Jutty ferre.

**N**ow shall ye know what theis termes betokyn a moo folowing. as Huf. Jutty ferty. Mounte Raundon. Crepe. Ennewed.

**A** Soþhalde or a wrecell that shal flee to the welle. to the  
wolt or to the bake. in this maner shē is caught ye most  
synde a folle in the Ryuer or in a pitte pueli. and theren sett  
yours hauke a grete space of. upon a mooth hill or on the gro  
unde. and crepe softely towardē the folle : from yoldre halde  
streight way. and when ye come almost ther as the folle lyeth.  
ooke backwardē to warde the halde. and with yoldre hande or  
with yoldre tabur syke : bēke yoldre halde to come to you. and  
when shē is on byng. and comyng lōd bi the grounde. and is al  
most at yold. then smye yours tabur. and cry huff. huff. huff  
and make the folle to spryng. and with that noyse the folle wil  
rise and the halde wylt hym it.

**C** And now take heire. If yoldre halde hym the folle at the  
fer side of the Ryuer or of the Pitt from yold. Then shē sleeth the  
folle at the fer Jutty and if shē flee it upon that side that ye ben  
on. as it may haue dyuerse times. Then ye shal say shē hath sle  
en the folle at the Jutty ferri.

**C** If yoldre halde hym the folle a lofte : ye shal say shē to  
ke it at the mounte or at the souce.

**C** And if the folle spryng not bot flee a long after the Ryuer  
and the halde hym it then. ye shal say shē fled it at the Raun  
don.

### **C** Creepe.

**A** nd yoldre halde sleeth at or to the Creepe When ye haue yold  
re halde on yoldre fyst and crepe softely to the Ryuer or to the  
pit. and sleith softely to the brynde therof. and then cry huff.  
and bi that meane hym a folle. Then it is slayn at the C  
reepe oder at the fer Jutty or at the Jutty ferri. as a booue is sa  
ye.

**C**And if it happen as it dooth of times the folde for feare of  
polde halde wolt spryng and falle agen in to the Ryuer. or the  
halde sees hir. and so he styt and dare not arise. ye shal say  
then polde halde hath emelbed the folde in to the Ryuer. and  
so shal ye say and why be moo foldes in the Ryuer then thare  
polde halde nyminyng if they darenot arise for feare of yold  
he halde

## **C**A thefe.

**T**understonde pe that a Goshalde shalde not ffe to any fo-  
le of the Ryuer with bellis in no wise. and therfore a Gosh-  
halde is calde a thefe.

## **C**Querre.

**A**nd polde halde fleeth to the querre. When ther be in a sto-  
butt tyme Sordes of mallardes in the felde and When the espyth  
theym and comyngh couerte her selfe. and she preuyli conder bed-  
ges or ladd bi the gownde. and nymon of hem. or they use  
then ye shal say that the folde was slayn at the querre.

## **M**eche this terme draw.

**S**om folke myfuse this terme draw. and say that they haue  
the witt draw to the Ryuer. And that terme draw is propurly  
assigned to that halde that witt flee a Roke or a Crole or a  
Rewyn: upon a londe spryng. and then it most be sayd that  
sich an halde witt draw belt to a Rooke.

**D**owe ye shall vnderstonde if a man wyl make  
an hawke to the querre in this maner he most do

**T**ake a tame Malaude and set hym in a fayz playn . and  
let hym goo where he wylt . then take yoldre halwe vpon yoldre  
fist . and goo to that playn . and holde vpon yoldre hande a praty  
way of from the Malaude . and looke if the halwe can espie it .  
by hir alwyn corage and if she haue folwde the folde and desi-  
re to flee ther to . let hir flee it . and plymme wett vpon hir .  
and seue her so . iiij . or . viij . tymes and then she is made to the  
quare.

**I**haue knalbyn gentylmen that Wensoeuer and Whersoeuer  
thay fe any tame Dookes . and if theyr halwys wolle desire  
to thaym . then thay wolle let flee to them in coragyngh theyr  
hawlys to be wett fleyng to the quare an oder tyme .

**A** praty craft to take an hawke that is brokyn  
owt of new . and all maner of bowlys that lyt in  
trees if a man wyl.

**D**ooke whare an halwe perchith for alle nyght : in any ma-  
ner place . and softe and lyseslyclymbe to her with a scon-  
ce or a lanterne that hath bot oon light . in yoldre hande and  
let the light be towarde the halwe so that she se not yoldre face  
and ye may take hir by the legges or oder wise as ye lyft .  
and in lyke wise alle other maner folde .

## Of hawkys Bellys.

**T**he bellis that yowre halde shal ther looke in any ti-  
se that they be not to heuy ouer hir polver to weyrs. al  
so that noon be heuper then an other bot like of weyght.  
Looke also that they be sonolwe and well sondyng and shil  
and not both of oon solvne: bot that oon be a semystyn vnder  
a noder. and that they be hole and not brokyn and specialli  
in the sondyng place. For and they be brokyn they wylt solv  
ne full dulli.

**O**ff sparc halde bellis ther is chooce and lyttill of charge  
of thaym: for ther beeth plenty.

**A**Bot for Goshawkes somlyme Bellis of Melen were  
calde the best. and they be full goode for they comunely be solv  
nen with siluer and soldē ther after. Bot ther be nold foloyng  
of Duchelande bellys: of a tolune calde durdright. and they  
be passing goode. for they be wele sortid well sondyng. sonolw  
re of Ryngyng in shilnes and passing well lastyng.

**A**Here endyfth the proceis of haldeyng. And nold foloyng  
the naameys of all maner of haldeys & to whom they belong.

**C** They's haukes belong to an Emproure

**T**hey's be the names of all maner of halckes . First an Eggle . a Baldere . a Melobne . The symplest of theis . in Butt sler an Lynde calfe . a Falbh . a Roo a Kydde . an Elke . a Crane . a Bustarde a Storke . a Swan . a Fop in the playn grotende . And theis be not enluted . ne reclaymed . by cause that they be so ponderolose to the perch portefiff . And theis . in . by ther nature belong to an Emproure .

**C** Theis hawkes belong to a kyng .

**T**her is a Gersalcken . a Tercett of a gersaulken . And theys belong to a kyng .

**C** For a prynce .

**T**her is a Falcken gentill . and a Tercett gentill . and theys be for a prynce .

**R**or a duke .

**C** Ther is a Falcken of the rock . And that is for a duke

**R**or an Elle .

**C** Ther is a Falcken peregryne And that is for an Elle

**C** For a Baron .

**E**Also ther is a Bustarde and that hauke is for a Baron

## Hawkes for a knyght

**C**ther is a Sacre and a Sacret . And theis be for a knyght .

## Hawhis for a Squyer .

**C**ther is a Lanare and a Lancett . And theys belong to a Squyer .

## Bor a lady

**C**ther is a Merlyon . And that hauke is for a lady

## An hauke for a yong man

**C**ther is an Hoby . And that hauke is for a yong man  
And theys be holikes of the tolure : and ten both bluid to be  
wite and reclaymed .

## **C**And yit ther be moo kyndis of hawkes

**C**ther is a Goshaloke . and that hauke is for a yeman

**C**ther is a Tercelt . And that is for a polvere man .

**C**ther is a Space haloke . and he is an haloke for a prest

**C**ther is a Muskyte . And he is for an holibater clerke  
And theis be of an oðer maner kynde . for they flie to Ouer  
se and to fer Jutty and to Jutty fferry .

## **C**Explicit .



**L**yke wise as i the booke of halowyng aforesayd are Brityn  
and noled the termys of plesure belongyng to gentil men  
hauyng delite therin. In thessame maner thys booke folowyng  
shelvith: to sych gentil personys the maner of hantynge for  
all maner of bestys. Whether they be Beestys of venery . or  
of chace . or Rascall . And also it shelvith all the termys co  
uenyent as bett to the holondys as to the bestys aforesayd .  
And in certayn ther be many dyuerse of thaym . as it is de  
clared in the booke folowyng .

### **B**estys of venery .

**M**eresouere ye fare by syrth or by fett  
My dere chylde take he de holt Cistrum dooth you lett  
Holt many maner bestys of venery ther were  
Lystyn to yowre dame and she shal yow lete  
Folde maner bestys of venery there are  
The first of thaym is the . hert . the secunde is the hare  
The thirde is oon of tho . the Wolff and not oon moe

### **B**estys of the Chace .

**A**nd where that ye cum in playne or in place  
I shal yow lett whiche be bestys of enhace  
Oon of thaym is the . Bucke . a nother is the Doo  
The Fox and the Martron . and the Wilde Roo  
And ye shal my dere chylde other bestys all .  
Where so ye hem fynde Rascall ye shal hem call  
In syrth or in fett : or in forest I yow lett .

## Note here the aage of an hert.

**A**nd for to speke of the hert iff ye wolt it lese  
We shal hym a . Calfe . call at the fyrist yere  
The secunde yere a . Broket . so shal hym call  
The thirde yere a . Spayad . lerneth thus al  
The fourthe yere a . Stagge . call hym by any way  
The fift yere a . grete Stagge . youce dame bide yow say  
The vi . yere call ye hym an . hert .  
Doth so my childe Wylys ye been in quare

## To know the heede of an hert . & that is dyuerse

**A**nd of the horne that he then berith a boleste .  
The fyrist heide shal be Jugett Bych obole  
Ther in syndyn ther fulche dyuersite .  
Mathelis the . vi . yere euermoore at the leest  
Tholb shal be Juge the perche of the same beeste  
Whan he hath Alwonteler Wiche obole any lett  
Ryall and Surriall also therre Isett  
And that in the tope so whan ye may hym been  
Then shal ye call hym forchyd an hert of tenne  
And whan he bath in the tope . iiiij . of the selue  
Then ye shal call hym trochid an hert of . viij .  
And afterwarde in the tope whan ther . viiiij . bene  
Then shal ye call hym sommyd an hert of . xvij .  
And from . viiiij . forward call so besalf  
Be he never of so many ye shal hym summed call  
Ryght of the nombre eugen that he is  
Callid hym from . iiii . forth summed Thrys  
Also haue ye sele an hert haled beele .

# A n Heerde . A Beve . A Sounder . A Route.

**C**My chylde callith herdys of hert and of hynde  
And of Bucke and of doo Whare yo hem synde  
And a Beue of Roos What place thay be in  
And a Sounder ye shall of the Wyld foyne  
And a Rolute of Wolves whare thay wassen inne  
So shall ye hem call as many as thay bene

# A Littill heerde . A mydyll heerd A grete heerd

**C**. pp . is a litlyll heerde though it be of hyndis  
And . pl . is a mydyll heerde to call hym be leyndis  
And . lppp . is a grete heerde call . ye hem so  
Be it hert be it hynde bucke or ellis doo

# How ye shall say a greet hert & not a fair & oder

**C**A greet hert When ye hym se so shall ye hym call  
Bot neuermore a sayre hert for no thyng that may be falt  
A greet hynde a greet bucke and a sayre doo  
My sonnys Whare ye walke call ye hem so  
So ye shulde naame sich dace: and do as I yold lete

# **C**What is a beuy of Roos greet or small

**C**And sey is a bue of Roos on a rabe  
And . p . is a mydyll beuy full wele 3 it halbe  
A greet beuy is . yn . When thay to gedre be  
And so call hem sonnys Ware that ye hym se  
The moore nombris than ylvis : the gretter the beuy is

## What is a Sounder of swyne grete or small

**A**Twelfe make a Sounder of the Wyld swyne  
For a medyll Sounder what place thay be inne  
A grete sounder of swyne . xx . ye shal call  
Fozz geet not this lesson for thyng that may fall  
Thynke what I say : my sonne nyght and day

## Of the Roo hunting . brekyng . and dressing

When ye hunt at the Roo then shalt ye say shooore  
He crossies and treasones yowte holondys byfoore  
A grete Roobucke ye call hym not so  
Bot a fayre Roobucke and a fayre woo  
With the bellis and with the blode

Rebarde ye yowte holndes my sonnyng so gode

**A**nd ech foote ye shall cutte in . iiiij . I yowt hemme  
Take the bellis and the blode and do al to gedre then  
Neuyt hit than to yowte holondys so

And moche the gladder then they will go

That to yowte holndes a rebarde is call

Foz hit is eaten on the grolnde and on the skynne dylle

**A** The Roo shall be herded by venetiȝ Roene

The . iiij . further legges the heide layde by tbene

And take oon ender legge vpon I yowb pray

And that oder forder legge right as I yowb say

Vpon the oder forder legge bothe ye hem pytte

And with that other further legge vpon ye hem knytte

Oon thys maner thus when ye haue wrought

All hole to the kechen then hit shall be brought

Sane that yowte holndes eate : the bellis and the fete.

## **N**ow of thage & undoing of the boore

**C**Now to speke of the boore the fyrist yere he is  
A pygge of the Sounder called ale haue I blis  
The secunde yere an hogge and so shall he be  
And an hoggestere When he is of yeres . ii.

And When he is of . iii . yere a boore shal he be  
From the Sounder of the swyne than destrith he  
A Synguler is he so : for a lone he will goo.

**C**When ye haue slayn the boore and will do hym right  
We shall condo hym conflayne When he shall be dight  
XX . breedys and . ii . of hym ye shall make  
By the lalb of venery as I dare conder take  
Churchg yoldre houndys by styrngth iff that he be dede  
They shall haue the wyllis toyle With the brede  
Cast vpon the groonde ther the boore was slayne  
And that is calde a Rebarde so hunteris it sayne  
Upon the erth so haue I blis : for that so eaten is

## **N**ow of the hare .

**C**Now for to speke of the hare my sonnys seareli  
That best kyng shall be calde of all venery  
For all the fayre spekyng and blaabyng leif sete  
Commyng of sedkyng and syndyng of the hare  
For my leif chyldez I take it on honde  
He is the meruellest best that is in ony londe  
For he symaes and crutis and Roungeth euermoore  
And bætis talow and gnis : and a boone teeth bath he soone  
And other while he is male : and so ye shall hym fynde  
And other while female and kyndelis by kynde

**C**And when he is female and kyndelis hym with in  
In . iii . degrees by hem beith or he with hem tbyn  
Too rough and . ii . smoth who will hem se  
And ii . knotis also that kyndelis will be  
When he is female so tell I my tale .

### **C**The rewarde for howndys .

**C**When yowre houndis by strenath hath done her to dede  
The hunter shall rewarde hem then with the hede  
With the shulders and the sides and with the bellis all  
And all thyng with in the boome save onli the gait  
The paunce also : yeue hem noon of thoo .  
With rewarde when oon the erth it is dalt .  
With all goode hunters the halow . it is colt  
Then the loynes of the hare loke ye not forgete  
Bot bryng hem to the kechyn for the lordis meete  
And of this ilke hare speke we no mare .

### Wiche bestes shall be fayne & wiche scripte

**C**Mold to speke of the bestes when they be fayne  
Hold many be strypte and hold many be fayne  
All that bere skyne and talowd and Rounge leue me  
Shall be fayne save the hare for he shall stripte be  
And all that berith greece : and piles ther oppon  
Ever shall be strypte when they be vndoone  
On theys maner play : thus ye shall say .

**W**hiche brestis shall be recide with the lymper .

**C**My deere sonnys echeon nowtill I yold lete  
Hould many maner brestys as with the lymper  
Shall be rypteryde in fryth or in felde  
Booth the hert and the bucke and the boore so wilde  
And all other brestys that hunted shall be  
Shall be sought and founde with Ratchis so ffe  
Say thus I yold tolde : my childe so bolde

### **T**he discreyng of a Bucke .

**C**And ye speke of the Bucke the fyfte yere he is  
A falone. soldayng on his dam say as I yold tolde  
The secunde yere a preker. the . iij . yere a soldewell  
A soldore at the . iii . yere the twelveth I yold tolde  
The . vi . yere call hym a Bucke of the fyfth heide  
The . xi . yere call hym a Bucke and do as I you rede

### **O**f the hornys of a Bucke .

**C**The hornys of a grete Bucke or he so be  
Most be summyd as I say herkempth to me  
Two braunchis first pallomyd he most haue  
And . iii . avauners the soth iff ye will haue  
And . xxiiii . espelers and then ye may hym call  
Whiche so ye be a grete Bucke I tell yold all

### **O**f the Roobucke .

**C**And iff ye of the Roobucke will knaw thy name  
The first yere he is a kyde soukyng on his dame

The secunde yere he is a gerle : and so he sickle ast  
The thirde yere an hemule loke ye hym callt  
Robucke of the first kyde he is at the iiiij. yere  
The . v. yere a Roobucke hym callt I yold leire  
At saynt andrews day his hornys he wist cast  
In moore or in moos he hidryth hem fast  
So that no man may hem sone fynde  
Ellys in certayn he doos not his kynde  
**A**t saynt Jamys day wher so he go  
Then shall the Roobucke gendre with the Roo  
And so boldely ther as ye durne  
Then is he calde a Roobucke goyng in his turne  
And iff ye may a Robucke sle with olde any fayle  
And ye fynde that heue grece at his tayle  
Als sum Robuckeps haue when ye hit fynde  
Then shall ye vere it as ye do of hert and of hynde  
Also the Robucke as hit is weele kyde  
At holprode day he gooth to Ryde .  
And wisth the hit : when he may gete hit

### Now of the hert and of the hynde .

**S**onynys of the hert and the hynde leme yet ye may  
They draw to the herde at holi roode day  
To the stepe then they goon yche hote day at noon  
Whiche stepe they wesen my childe I yold say  
Till hit be Myddesomere at the last way  
The cause of the stepe is to weete hym fro the flee  
Who so commyth to that place may se hit with his ighe  
An other thyng they wesen my chylde also  
The same seson of the yere to soyle to go

## Of the cryng of theys beestys .

**I**An heret belowyng and a bucke groynys I synde  
And iche Roobucke certayne bellis by kynde  
The noyses of theyes beestys thus ye shalst call  
For pride of theyre make they wesen hit all  
Say chylde Wher ye goo : yodore dame taught you so

## Merke well theys sesonyngs following.

**I**Eymre of grace begynneth at mydsomer day  
And tyt holi Roode day lastyng as I you say  
**I**The seson of the fox fro the Matryng  
Tyll the annunciation of olbre lady fre  
**I**Seson of the Robucke at Ester shalst begynne  
And till mychelmas lastith nygh or she blynne  
**I**The seson of the Kee begynneth at Michelmas  
And hit shalst endure and last vntill Candilmas  
**I**At Michelmas begynneth hunteynge of the hare  
And lastith till mydsomer ther nytt no man hit space  
**I**The seson of the Wolfe is in iche cuntre  
At the seson of the fox and evermore shalst be  
**I**The seson of the boore is from the Matryng  
Tyll the purification of olbre lady so fre  
For at the Matryng of olbre lady swete  
He may fynde wher he goeth vnder his feete  
Booth m Bodys and feldis corne and oder frute  
Wher he after foode makyth any sute  
Crabbys and acormys and nettis ther thay growb  
Halops and breppes and other thyngys gnold  
That till the purification lastys as ye se  
And makyth the Boore in seson to be  
For whyle that frute may : last his time is never past

## Of the hunting of the haare

**N**old to speke of the haare holb att shall be wrought  
When she shal with houndes be foundyn and soght  
The first Worde to the houndis that the hunt shall olde pit  
Is at the kerell doore When he openys it  
That att may hym here : he shall say acre.  
For his holbndes wold cum to hastely  
That is the first Worde my sonne of veneray  
And When he hath coulyd his boundes ychoon  
And is forth with hem to the felde goon  
And When he has of cast his coldples at witt  
Then shall he speke and say his holbndes tilt  
Ihors de couple auaunt se auaunt thys so  
And then So ho so ho . thries and no mo  
And then say . Sa sa ey auaunt So holb I you pray  
And iff ye se yowre holbndes haue goode witt to renne  
And draw a bayarde fro yold say as I yold kerme  
Here holb amy . agayne hem catt so  
Then . Sweff mon amy sweff . to make hym soft go  
And iff any fynde of the haare ther he hath bene  
And he hight Richez or Bemounde thus to hym bedene  
Opes a Bemounde le baillant . and I shall you a bolde  
Or quida trou la colbarde on la court colbre  
That Bemounde the Worte with olde any fayle  
That Benyngth to fynde the coward with the short tayle

**C**And iff ye se swerte the haare at pasture hath bene  
Iff hit be in the tyme of the come grene  
And iff yowre houndes chace swert at yowre witt  
Then . ij . motis shall ye blad tooth lode and shitt

There oon and there an other there be pasturage ha  
Then say . illoques illoques in the same place  
So say to hem in kynde : onto tyme that ye hir fynde  
And then cast a signe all the feld abowte  
To se at hir pasture where she hath be in or oþer  
Oþer at hir forme for gladli to be she is not lefe  
There she hath pasturid in tyme of Relefe  
And any hounde fynd or myng of hir mace  
There as she hath byne and is goon oþer of that place  
Ha sy touȝ cy est pl. so shalt ye say  
venez aveȝ so hold fa . also loldre as ye may  
Sa cy ad este so hold . after that  
Sa fa cy auaunt . and therof be not lat  
And When ye se onto the playne her at the last  
In feld or in erabull londe : or in to the wode past  
And yoldre hounde will fynde of her ther then  
Say . la douce amy la est a . and oo as I yold ken  
That is to say swete frende : ther is he come hold  
For to dry here . and ther with ye shalt say so hold  
Illoques ey douce ey myplaunt so hold so hold . then elyȝ  
Thus may ye hold dere sonnys leyne of veneryȝ  
And When ye come ther as ye wold he will dwelt  
And so semeth to yold well then say as I yold tell  
La douce la est a venuȝ . for to dwelt thore  
And therwith . iii . so hold . say ye no moore  
And iff it semes wold yold to fynde all in fere  
And wenien so to do then say . douce hold here hold here  
Hold here douce hold here hold here he sittys  
So shalt ye say my chylde and for no thyng lettys  
All maner bestys that euer chasede wode  
Hauie oon maner of wode . so hold . and no more

To fulfitt or confit eche maner of chaas  
The hund euermore in his molth that Worde he haas  
And iff yollre boundys at a chace renne ther ye hunt  
And the best begynne to renne as heztis be Wont  
Or for to hanylon as doos the sop with his gyle  
Or for to crosse as the Kee dooth oder While  
Oder dwelt so that yollre honndys cannot olde go  
Then shalst ye say. hoo sa amys sa sa  
A complex sa arete so hold . sich is the play  
And sohold as moch is as sa hold to say  
Bot for . sohold is short in speche When it is brought  
Therefore say we . sohold wot sa hold say we noght  
And iff yollre houndis chase at hert or at haare  
And they renne at defaute thus ye shall say thare  
Icy sohold assayne assayne ston hoo  
Sa assayne arete sohold theis Wordes and no moe  
And iff yollre houndes renne Wett at sop or at wo  
And so sayle at defaute say thus ferther or ye goo  
Ho ho ore swef aluy douce a luy . that they here  
Ho hoy assayne assayne sa arete  
So hold so hold venez a twpler . and do as I yoll haenne  
The moore Worshyp may ye haue among all memme  
Molbre craftes let be kynde : and do as I yoll bynde  
All my sonnys in same : and thus may ye haune of game

The boost that the mayster hunter makyngh to  
his man now here foloyng ye may here .

**T**he mayster to his man makyngh his Royes  
That he knoldith be kynde What the best doys  
At hunting euermore When he gops

Quod the man to his maister that were good loore  
For to knaw what he doos the houndes before  
What dooth he maister quod the man  
He dooth quod he erbyn as thow mayst se  
þrekþ . and so dooth no best bot he  
When brakþ he quod the man What is that to say  
With his feete he oppyngs the erthe ther he gooth a way  
What is the cause quod the man maister I the pray  
That the hert be foore the houndes When they hym hunte ay  
That then to the Ryuer he welleis for to goon  
Quod the maister to the man ther ar causes toon

Bor. ii. cawles the hert defirith to the Ryuer . a  
note wele theris temys folowing descendre a oder

**C**on cause for the Ryuer descendre he is ay  
And so is he to the Water When he takith the way  
Why callist thou hym . descendre . maister I the pray  
For he paynes of is myght the sooth I the say  
A nother is to the Water whi he gooth other whyle  
The houndes that hym selben to founde to begyle

**C**rit of this hert quod his man maister Woldre I hen  
In to the Water When he leppys what he makes then  
He proferith quod the maister and so ye shalt say  
For he wot not hym selfe yet hold he wille a way  
Wherouer over the Water he wille for passe  
Or turne ayn thessame way ther he fyrt was  
Therefore hit is profre as theys hunteis sayne  
And Reprofer iff thessame way he turne aynie

At that oder side of the Water iff he vpon sterte  
Then shall go catt hit the soule of the best  
And that is for the Water of his leggee Beete  
Dolone in to the steppis ther fallyn of his fete  
Alpen the Water his Way euuen iff he bent  
Then brekyth he Water ther to take yold tent  
And iff with the Water go algate yold hit shall  
Defoulant the Water an best so hym catt

## Now of the Nomblys nere wele the temys

**A** The man to his mapster spekþ full blþt  
Off the nomblys of the best that he Wolde hym kith  
Held mony endys ther shall be hem Wiche mine  
Quod the mapster bot oen thyk nee thyne  
And that is bot the Gargilon to speke of all bi dene  
And all thys oðer. crokes and Roundelius. bene

## The Anouncers. the Forchers

**A** Wit Wolde I Wit and thold Woldest me leere  
The crokes and the Roundellis of the Nomblys of y<sup>e</sup> dene  
On croke of the Nomblys lyþ euermoore  
Under the thooote tolle of the best be foore  
That callid is. anouncers Who so can hem hene  
And the hyndermost parte of the Nomblys thene  
That is to say the forefors that liggen euer betwene  
Th. n. thys of the best that oðer crokes euerne

In the Myght that callid is the wondert also  
For the sides wilnde a wolle wren it is fro  
My deere sonnys holde : say of game I thus wold tolde

**C**pit Wolde I witt maister Whi theys houndes al  
Bayen and cryen When thay hym cethe shalld  
For thay Wolde haue helpe that is thayz skylt  
For to flee the best that thay renne tyt

**C**Tell me mayster quod the man What is the skylt  
Why the haire Woolde so faynne renne ayenest the hilt  
Quod the mayster for hez legges be shorter be foote  
Then be hynde : that is the skylt of poore

**C**What is the cause quod the man y<sup>e</sup> men say of y<sup>e</sup> brest  
What the haire sittith aye When she takyth hez reest  
And oder brestys ly : as communeli men sayne  
For .ii. causes quod the mayster I tell the playne  
One is for she hurcles sorpon hir houghis ay  
And all other brestys : on the side to the grotunde say  
An oder cause ther is and that is noo less  
For she keecith bothe selbet and pure greece

**C**pit Wolde I mayster quod the man sayne Wilt now  
Whiche lyth the fuet of the haire be hynde or before  
Ouer the lopne quod the mayster of ihe haire thow take  
By twyn the tayle and the chyne even oon the backe  
**C**pit Wolde I mayster quod the man shes at the leir  
What thow walkest in the felde with thy lymeez  
Ther as an her pasturred hath : or y<sup>e</sup> thow hym se  
To knalde facit or lene Wlther that he be  
I can quod the mayster Wlltell tell the thys caas  
Whiche hele whiche he cap : and whiche he sumeryed has

Volow andy englaymede iff that it be  
Then is he farr I the farr leyne theyps of me  
And iff it be baith blacke and harshe and clene  
Then he is meegre larbre andy leene  
And of thyng ilke thyng iff thold leue not me  
Take heede in the Wyntre and then thold may it se

**C**vit mayster of the haire sayn Wolde I Wit moore  
What he dooth When he gooth the holondys befoore  
He sorthe and resorthe ther he gooth a Way  
Prayckyth and repryckyth the sooth for to say  
Bot what is that quod the man When they so done  
That shal I quod the mayster tell the full soone  
In the feeldes Where he gooth no ways beene  
There he sorthe When he steppyth and hit may not be seene  
And after When he doloblitth and turnyth agaynne  
Then he resorthe as goode hunteres saynne  
And When he tennyth in the Way dry or weete  
Then men may fynde fostals of clees or of feete  
That prayckyth the haire aye When he dooth soo  
And repryckyth then iff he agaynne goo

**C**Maister vit quod the man What is this to say  
A waunzellay a lay . and a Relay .  
That shal I tell the quod he : for a littitt byzete  
When the holondys ar set : an herf for to mete  
And other hym chasen and fololbyn to take  
Then all the Relais thold may oppon hem make  
Even at his comyng of thold lett thy holondys goo  
While the oder that he behynde fer arn hym froo  
That is . a wauntelai . and so thold shal hit call  
For they are than fer before thos oder holondes all

And an hyndryng grete all oder contit  
For thay may not that day nomore selve at witt  
And holde thyn houndes stylle iff that tholb so do  
Contit all the houndes that be behynd be cum ther to  
Than let thyn houndes all to gedre goo  
That called is an assay . and looke tholb say so  
And that hyndryng is yit to them that be behynde  
For the restede witt ouergo the weare by hynde  
A relay is after when the houndes ar past  
Fer be fore witt the best that hiet hem fast  
To let thyn houndes fer after hem goon  
And that is then a fortheryng to hem echoon  
For and thyn houndes haue ouertake thees oder bi destres  
Then shal they all folue hym of oon swefnes

### What is a forloyng .

What mayster Wolde I sayn thus at yow levere  
What is a forloyng for that is goode to here  
That shal I say the quod by the soch at leste  
When thy houndes in the wode sethyng any beest  
And the beest is stott awaie olde of the synth  
Or the houndes that tholb hast meten therdith  
And any other houndes before : than may witt hem meke  
Thees oder houndes arn then forloyned I the herte  
For the beste and the houndes arn so fer before  
And the houndes be hynde be weare and soote  
So that thay may not at the best cum at ther witt  
The houndes be fore forloyned hem and that is the skyll  
Thay be ay so fere be fore to me iff tholb witt trust  
And thys is the forloyned lete hit iff tholb lust

## Wiche thre thynges cause the houndes to endure

**C**vit woldे ȝ beete mayster iff it ware shp witt  
Whan thyng houndes renne an hert vntill  
And ay the further they goo the gladder they bene  
For . iii . causes quod he oft tyme is sene  
Hon is whan the hert rennyng fast on a rese  
He swetith that hit rennyng dolone thorogh oþer his clees  
The houndes whan they synde of that it is swete  
Then ar they leuer to renne and loþer to lete  
An oder cause whan the hert ny no moore may  
Then witt he white froth caste ther he gooth a way  
Whan thyng houndes synde of that then ar they glad  
In hope they shal hym haue and renne so rad  
The . iii . cause is of the hert whan he is nygh dede  
Then he castys oþer of his moloch froth and blade rede  
The houndes knalid that he shal be take soone than  
And euer the further they goo the gladdir they renne  
These ar sh causes . iii . that caloses hem gladde to be

## Wich best a slay hounde takis as lone as a wift

**C**hat beest yit mayster ȝ ap it for non yit  
That moost hole all houndes rennen vntill  
And also lone the slowyst shal hym ouer take  
Als the slowyst shal do what way so euer he take  
That beest a Basyn hight a Brok or a Gray  
These . iii . namys he bath the sooth for to say  
And this is cause therof : for he witt by kynde  
Go thorugh shornys a way the shyhest he may synde  
Ther as the slowyst houndes may ne further goo  
Then the slowest of foote be he neuer so thow

## Whiþ the haare sumayȝ and crotelis .

Cpit mayster Wolde I wete Whi that men sayn  
That the haare sumays and crotays boþt playn  
And all other maner beestys that hantid be  
Fempouȝ or fenouȝ as we wele hit se  
That shal I weett tell the quod the mayster then  
For whi that he sumays and crotas weat I wen  
He semaith for hi berysth taloll . this is no lies  
And he crotelis men sayn for he breith grees  
And Roulais on his houghis when he lettis it go  
And beestys of sich kynde synde we no moo  
Hold mony beestis sumayȝ mayster sayn I Wolde here  
And hold many fenouȝ that ware goode to here  
All this to tell quod the mayster I holde hit bot lighȝt  
All beestis that beere taloll and stonde upright  
Sumayȝ when they do so say as I the keme  
And all oder fenouȝ that wilken dolene themse .

## How mony maner beestis of venerȝ Releue

Hold mony maner beestis pit mayster me tell  
Off venerȝ Releuen by fryth or by ffelt  
To this quod the mayster I shal lbe answare  
Off all beestis bot . i . the herȝ and the haare  
From the Annunciation of olde lady day  
The herȝ then releues the sooth for to say  
Tilt saynt Petris day and paule . and the haare right :  
From the Purification of olde lady bright :  
Tilt the translation Releups : leue ye me  
Off saynt Thomas tide of Caunturbutie ,

## To vudo the Wyld Boore.

**C**onit my chylde of the boore for to speke moore  
Whan he shal be vndon 3 tell yold be foore  
pppiij . bredis ye shal of hym make  
Now vllt yold my sonnys vlt veete ye shal them take  
The fyrt of theym is the hede what euer be falt  
An oder is the coler and so ye shal hit call  
The sheldys on the sholderis : therof shal . iiij . be  
Then eyder side of the shayne devid in . iiiij .  
The prestellis and the gambonis depe theym . iiij .  
And . iiij . feleteys he bath : forgete not thoo  
Then take is legges and is feete & shewith yollure sleght  
For they shal of his bredys be countid for . viij .  
Departith the chyne in . iiiij . pecis and nomoo  
And take ther yollure bredis . vij . and . iiij .  
And sayre put the greece whan it is take a way  
In the bludder of the boore my chylde 3 yold pray  
For hit is a medecyne : for mony maner pyne

## C how ye shall breeke an Hert.

**A**nd for to speke of the hert while we thynke oon  
My chylde fyrt ye shal hym sue whan he shal te vndon  
And that is for to say or euer ye hym dyght  
With in his olone hornys to lay hym upright  
At thessap cut hym that lordys may see :  
A noon fat or leen whider that he bee  
Than cut of the coddis the bely euen froo  
Or ye begynne hym to flee : and then shal ye goo

At chaulis : to begynne assone as ye may  
And slyttith hym dolone even to thassay  
And fro thassay even delone the bele shalt ye slice  
To the pissitt ther the codde was a way kritt  
Then slit the lyfte legge even first before  
And then the lyfte legge by hynde or ye do moore  
And thees oder legges upon the right syde  
Upon the same maner slyt ye that syde  
To goo to the chelys looke ye be prest  
And so fleeth hym dolone even to the brest  
And so fleeth hym forth right vnto thessay  
Even to the place where the codde was cut a way  
Then fleeth the same wyse aft that oder syde  
Bot let the taylt of the brest stell ther oon byde  
Than shalt ye hym vndo my chylde I yold Rede  
Ryght upon his alone shynne and lay hit on brede  
Take brede of the cutting of the same dene  
And begynne fyrt to make the Erbere  
Than take olde the shuleris . and slyttith a noon  
The baly to the syde from the corbyn bone  
That is corbyns fee : at the deeth he will be  
Then take olde the selbet that hit be not lafte  
For that my chylde is good for lechecraft  
Than put thyn honde softely vnder the brest bone  
And ther shalt ye take olde therber a noon  
Than put olde the paunch . and from the paunch trass :  
A way brightly the Rate sick as he haas  
Hoole it with a syngre . do as I yold kenne  
And with the bloode and the greece fillith hit therme  
Looke therde that ye haue and nedelt thereto :  
For to sell it with all or ye moore do .

The smale guttis than ye shall oþt pþt  
From hem take the maw . forþet not it .  
Than take oþt the leuer . and lay hit on the skynne  
And after that the bludder with oþt moore dynne  
Than dresst the Nombles : first that ye take  
Dolone the aþauncers kerue that cleues to the necks  
And dolone with the boltwote put them a noon  
And kerue vpon the flesh ther vpon to the back boþn  
And so forth the fillittis that ye vpon arece  
That fallith to the nombles . and shal be ther :  
With the neris also and selbit : that ther is  
Even to the mydryf that vpon hym is  
Than take dolone the mydryf from the sides hooþe  
And haue vpon the nombles hooþe by the bolt throte  
In thy hand than them holde . and looke and se  
That all that longith them to . to geder that they be  
Than take them to thy boder to holde for trist  
Whylis thold them dolblyst and dightis as the list  
Than a way the lyghtis . and oon the skynne them lay  
To a byde the querce my chylde I vþlo pray .  
Than shal ye slyt the slough ther as the hert lith  
And take a way the Eres from it and by slyth  
For sich heris hath his hert : ay it vpon  
As men may se in the beest When he is condon  
And in the myddis of the hert a boþn shal ye fynde  
Looke ye geue hit to a lorde . and chylde be kynde  
For hit is kynde for mony malydies  
And in the myddis of the hert evermore it lies  
Than shal ye lyft the skyrnis the teeth even fro  
And after the Ragge boþn cuttis even also  
The forchis : and the sydes even beþene  
And looke that yðdore knyfes ay whetyd bene

Than curne up the forches . and frote them With bloode  
For to sauе the greet . so do men of goode  
Than shalt ye cut the necke the sydes euen fro  
And the heide fro the necke cuttyth also  
The toong the brayn the paunch and the necke  
Whan thay shal be weett With water of the becke :  
The smale guttis to the lightis in the derys :  
A bove the best of the best Whan thow them reis  
With all the blode that ye may gete and byn  
All to geder shalt be take . and layde oon the skyn.  
To geue yowre houndes . that callid is 3 bis :  
The quyre . a bove the skyn for it etyn is  
And who dightis hym so by my counseyle  
Shall haue the lefte shuler for his trauncyle .  
And the Right shuler wher so euer he bee  
Reueth to the foster for that is his fee  
And the lyuer also of the same best  
To the fosterys knaue reueth at the least  
The nombles trussh in the skynne . and hardell hym fast  
The sides and the forches to geder that thay last  
With thender legges . be doon so it shalt  
Than bryng it boom . and the skynne With all  
The nombles . and the hornes . at the lordis gate  
Than boldely blos the price tharat .  
Yowre play for to mynne . Or that ye come 3 ne

**E**xplicit Dam Juliana  
Barnes in her boke of hantynge.

## Blestis of the chace of the swete fewte a knyng.

**T**her be bestys of the chace : of the swete felote . And tho be the Bucke . the Doo . the Beere . the Reynd the Elke . the Spycard . the Otre . and the Marton .

**T**her be bestis of the chace of the seynkyng felote And thay be the Roobucke . and the Roo . the Fulmard . the Fyches . the Gauze . the Graye . the Fox . the Squyrell . the Whitrat . the Sot . and the Fulcatte .

## C The namys of diuerse maner houndis

**T**his be the namys of houndes . First ther is a Grehounds a Bastard . a Mengrelys . a Mastys . a Lemor . a Spanyll . Rachys . Benetys . Croudes . Bocheris houndes . Myddynge dogges . Crindeltayles . and spukhetid curris . and smale ladies popis that beere a bay the flees and dyue . tis smale saltis .

## C The properteis of a goode Grehound.

**A** Grehound shulde be heded like a Snake . and necked like a Drake . Foted like a Rat . Tayled like a Rat . Syded lyke a Ceme . Chyned like a Beme

**C** The first yere he most lerne to fede . The secund yere to fel de hym lede . **C** The . ij . yere he is felow lyke . The . iii . yere ther is noon like **C** The . v . yere he is good enough The . vi . yere he shal holde the plough **C** The . viii . yere he witt awayle : grete bilitys for to assayle . **C** The . viij . yere likeladist . The . ix . yere carcadyst . **C** And when he is com

myng to that yere : haue hym to the tanner . **C**For the brest  
holonde that euer bilke hadde . at . ix . yere he is full badde

## The propretess of a goode hors .

**A**Goode hors shulde haue . viii . propretess . and condicions .  
**A**y' is to wit . ij . of a man . ij . of a woman . ij . of a fox  
ij . of an haare and . iiij . of an asse .  
Off a man woldre wulde and hardy .  
Off a woman fayre brestid faire of lyre & ey to lippon ,  
Off a fox a faire tayle short eris with a good trot .  
Off an haire a greate eygh a dry lyde . and Welt rennyng  
Off an asse a bigge chyne a flatte lege . and goode houe .

Welt trauelid women ner Welt trauelid hors ther neu goode

**A**Rise erly . serue god deuouteli . and the Woldre besily doo  
thy Werke Wisedeli . yeue thy almese secretly Go by the way sad  
ly . Answeare the peple demurely . Go to thi mete appetideli .  
Sitt ther at discretely . Of thi tonge be not to liberall . Alas  
se therfrom tempatly . Goo to thi sooper soberly And to thy  
bede meecly . Be in thyne Inne Jocundly plesse thy loue du  
ly . And slepe surely .

## Merke wele theys . iiiij thynge .

**A**There be . iiii thynge principall to be dread of euyn wise man  
The first is the curse of olbre holy fader the pope .  
The secunde is thindignacion of a prince Quia indignacion  
regis vel principis more est  
The thirde is the fauor or the Wilt of a Judge .  
The iiii . is Sclaundre & the mutacion of a compnalte .

**W**ho that makith in Cristynmas a dog to his lader.  
And in March a Solb to is gardyne.  
And in May a sole of a Whise manrys counsell.  
He shal never haue goode lader. sayre gardyn. Nez he  
le kepyd coloncell.

**C**fer from thy Rynnyfmen keste the.  
Wrath not thy neigborys next the.  
In a goode corne cuntrie thresie the.  
And sittie dwyne Robyn and rest the.

**W**ho that byldys his hous all of falowbes.  
And prickyth a blynde hors ouer the falowbs.  
And suffrith hym byfe to seche mony halowbs.  
God sende hym the blysse of euerlastyng galowbis.

**I**f theis be not directid then go thei at a ventyr  
**C**ther be iii. thynges full hard to knalb.  
Wyche way that they witt dralbe.  
The first is the wayes of a yong man.  
The secunde the cours of a vessaylt in the see.  
The thirde of an Edder or a serpent sprent.  
The. iiii. of a fable sittynge on any thyng.

**T**oo byues in oon hous. too catrys and oon mous:  
Too dogges and oon boon: theis shal never accorde i oon

**W**ho that mannyth hym with his Rynne.  
And closith his crooste byth chevrees.  
Shall haue many legges brokynne.  
And also full lytylt goode scrupes.

# The Compaynys of beestys and fowlyg.

M Herde of Hertis	a pride of Lionys
an herde of all man deer	a Sleuth of Beiris
an Herde of Sibannys	a Cete of Brates
an Herde of Crany	a Bery of Conyis
an Herde of Corlebrys	a Riches of Martwryng
an Herde of Brennyngs	a Besynes of ferettis
an Herde of harlottys	a Grace of grehoundis of .ij.
a Nye of ffesauntys	a Lece of Grehoundis of .iiij.
a Beuy of Ladres	a Coupult of spaynellis
a Beuy of Roos	a Couple of rennyng houndis
a Beuy of Quaylis	a Litter of Welpis
a Sege of kerwynys	a Lyndynt of yong Cattis
a Sege of betouris	a Synguler of Botis
a Sorde or a sute of malardis	a Dryft of tame Swyne
a Mustre of Pecockys	an Harrasse of horse
a Walke of Snyts	a Ragg of coltis or a Rake
a Congregation of peple	a Barren of Mulis
an Expalynng of Larkis	a Trippe of Bele
a Wache of Myghtingalis	a Trippe of haars
an hoost of men	a Sagle of gees
a ffelishipping of wemen	a Brode of hennys
a Charme of Goldesynches	a badelyng of Dokis
a Cast of Brede	a Moonpaciers of Byues
a Couple or a paier of botillis	a State of Prynces
a fflight of Doues	a Thongh of barons
an unkynnes of Rauenes	a Studens of vikeris
a Claterlyng of choughes	a Supsluyte of Munnys
a Dissimulacion of breddis	a Scole of clerkes
a Route of knyghtis	a Doctryne of doctoris

- a Conutyng of prechoures  
a Sentence of Jugees  
a Dampnyng of Turroures  
a Diligens of Messangeris  
an Obeisans of suauntis  
a Sete of wetheris  
a Daught of breteleris  
a Proude shelbyng of taloris  
a Tempans of cokys  
a Stalke of fosteris  
a Boost of saudiouris  
a Laughtree of Osteloris  
a Glosyng of Cauerneris  
a Malevertnes of pedleris  
a Thraue of Throsferis  
a Squatte of Dalberis  
a Fighting of beggers  
an vntowth of sompneris  
a Melody of Harpers  
a Paunerty of pyperis  
a solely of sergeauntis  
a Tabernacle of bakers  
a Drifte of fishers  
a Disgelyng of Taylours  
a Bleche of soldieris  
a Smere of Corpouris  
a Cluste of Grappys  
a Cluste of chorlis  
a Rage of Maydneys  
a Rafull of knaups  
a blussh of boyes
- an vncedibilite of Cocoldis  
a Couy of partrichis  
a Sprynge of Celis  
a Dessertere of Lapblyngh  
a falt of Woodecockis  
a Congregation of pleueris  
a Couert of cootis  
a Duett of Turtillis  
a Titengis of pies  
an Ost of sparabolis  
a Swarne of bees  
a cast of haukis of y<sup>e</sup> towr. ij  
a Lece of thessame haukis. ij  
a Flight of Goshaukes  
a Flight of Swallowes  
a veldyng of Rookes  
a Murmuracion of stares  
a Route of Woluess  
a Lepe of Lebardis  
a Shredenes of Apis  
a Skulke of Thryps  
a skulke of ffopis  
a Nest of Rabettis  
a Labor of Mollis  
a Mute of houndes  
a Kenett of Rachis  
a Sute of alyan  
a Cobardnes of curris  
a Soundre of Wilde shayne  
a Stoode of Maris  
a shase of Gissis

a Droue of Mete  
a fflocke of Shepe  
a Bagle of Women  
a Pepe of chykamys  
a Multiplieng of husbondis  
a Pontificalite of prelatis  
a Dignyte of chanonygs  
a Charge of curatis  
a Discretion of prestis  
a Sualke of freus  
a bhomynable sight of mōris  
a Scott of fyfth  
a Example of Maisteris  
an Obscuans of herimyng  
an Eloquens of lalbeyeng  
an Execucion of Officerys  
a faith of Marchandis  
a pusion of stewardys of houſ  
a Keriff of Panteris  
a Credens of Selveris  
an vnbredyng of kerueris  
a Safegarde of porturis  
a Blast of hunteoris  
a Thretenyng of courteperis  
a Prowmpe of Capsteris  
a Lyeng of pardeneris  
a Misbelieve of paynteris  
a Lash of Carteris  
a Scoldyng of Remsteris  
a Wonderyng of Tynkeris

a Waywardnes of haywardis  
a Worship of Brateris  
a Neuthriuyng of Jogoleris  
a ffraunch of Mylneris  
a Festre of Barberis  
a Goryng of Bochouris  
a Trynket of Corueseris  
a flocke of Shouteris  
a Drunkship of Coblers  
a Sualke of foxis  
a Clustre of Mottis  
a Rage of the teethe  
a Rascall of Bopes  
a Disborship of Scottis

A Epilat

**H**ere folow the dew termys to speke of breekyngh or dressyng of dyuerse beestis and foulis &c  
And the same is shewed of certayn fysshes.

**A** Dere brokenne .  
A Goose reude  
a Pigeon heude and syde  
a Capon salbesede  
a Chevoun frusshyd  
a Cony vnlacede  
a Crane displayde  
a Curleb vnioyntede  
a Fesolont alet  
a Quayle byngged  
a Glouer mynsed  
a Pegeon thyghed  
Brawne leechyd  
a Swanne lyfe  
a Lambe shulderide  
a Kidde shulderide  
an Hen spoylede  
a Malarde vnbrasid  
an Heron dysmembrisid  
a Decoke disfigured  
a Beture vntachyd  
a Partich alet  
a Raale brestyde  
a Wodecoke thyghed  
an Egge Tyred  
a fyre Cymbered

## **N**ow of fysshes

A Salmon Chyned  
a Dyke splatted  
an Haddoke sided  
a Chren fynned  
a Sole loyned  
a Gurnarde chyned  
a Tenche salbed  
an Ele trousoned  
a Breame splayed  
a Barbitt buskyd  
a wrought gobettid

**C**ye shall say thus .

**A**n herte Herburghith  
a Bucke lodgith  
an Esquier lodgith  
a Roo beddith  
a yoman beddith  
an haare in her forme shul-  
deryng or leenyng .  
a Cony sittynge .  
a Wodecoke breekyng

**E**re nold foloyng shall be shelbedy all the Shypres  
And the Byschopryches of the reolme of Englond.  
And ye shall understande that the Shypres be written before  
and the bisshopriches of the same ar writ folowing nept aft  
and then afterward ar shelbed the Prouynces of this londe.

<b>K</b> ente.	Caunisbury.	Rouchestre.
<b>S</b> outhesep.		Chychestre.
<b>H</b> aampshire.	Sutherey.	Wynchestre.
<b>W</b> yldeshyre.	Barkeshyre.	Salybury.
<b>S</b> omerset shyre.	Dorset shyre.	Bathe.
<b>D</b> euershire.	Cornewaple.	Epestur.
<b>E</b> ssex.	Medlesep.	London.
<b>N</b> orthfolke.	Suthefolke.	Morlbyche.
<b>C</b> ambrygeshyre.		Elye.

**L**aycete. Huncyngdon. Northampton. Hertford. Bed-  
ford. Bokyngham. Owynford. Lyncolne. Lyncolne

<b>G</b> loucester.	Worcetur.	Wigorn.
<b>H</b> erfordshire.	Herford.	
<b>C</b> heshyre. Shropshyre. pte of Lancashire.	Chestre.	

**Y**orkeshire. Stafordshire. Darbshire. Notyngham-  
shire. and oder as parte of Lancastreshire. Morke.

## Prouynces of England.

**C**aunisbury. and Morke. Stafford. Darby. Notingham.  
Northumberlonde. Durham. Westmerlond. Tendale. Basile



**H**ere in thy booke folowyng is determinyd the synage  
of Coote armuris: and hols gentilmen shal be knolbyn  
from vngentill men. and hols bondage began first in aungelt  
and after succeeded in man kynde. as it is shewyd in processe  
woþre in the childe of Adam and also of Noe. and hols Noe  
deuyded the Worlde in .ij. partis to his .ij. sonnys. Also  
ther be shewyd the .ix. colordis in armys figured by the .ix.  
orderis of aungelis. and it is shewyd by the forsайд colordis  
Wyth ben Worthy and Wyth ben Royall. and of ryaliteis hi;  
ch þe ben noble and vich ben excellent. And ther ben here the ver  
tays of chualry and many other notable and famollese thyn  
gys to the plesure of noble personys shall be shewyd as the Wer  
kys folowyng Witteneses whi so euer lkyth to se thaym and  
rede thaym Wyth Were to longe nold to reuers. And after  
þeyys notable thynch aforesайд folowyth the Blasynge of all  
maner armys in latyn french and English.

**I**n cipit Liber arinorum .

**B**EYNG in Worthenes armes for to bere by the Royall  
blode in ordynance all nobult and gentyl men from the  
hyest dege to the labyst i thy booke shall be shewed. and to  
desuer Gentilnes from vngentilnes . **I**n so moche thatt  
all gentilnes cummyns of god of heuyn at heuyn 3 Wytt begyn  
Wyre Were .p. orderis of aungelis and nold stonde bot .ix. in co  
ote armuris of knablege encroledon full hye with precious sto  
nes. Wher lucifer with mylionys of aungelis obte of heuyn fel  
pon to hell and oþyr places and ben holdyn ther in bondage. and  
all Wher created in heuyn of gentill nature. A bondy man or a  
thurle Wytt say all we be cummyn of adam. So lucifer with his  
cumpary may say all we be cummyn of heuyn . **A**dam the

begynnyng of man kynde Was as a stokke consprayde and con-  
floreshed . and in the braunches is knollelege Wiche is woun  
and Wiche is grene .

How Gentilmen shall be knawyn from churlis  
& how they first began . And how Noe deuyd  
the world in . iii . partit to his iii sonnys .

**N**ote for to deuyde gentilmen from churkis in haast it shal be  
preued . Ther Was neuer gentilman nor churle ordenyd by kynd  
de bot he had fadre and modre . Adam and Eve had nother fa-  
dre nor modre . and in the sonnys of Adam and Eve Was foun-  
de boþe gentilman and churle . **B**y the sonnys of Adam and  
Eve Seth Abell and Cayn deuyded Was the royaþt blode fro  
the vngentel . A brother to sley his brother contrary to the lalþ  
Wher myght be more vngentelnes . **B**y that did Cayn become  
a churle and all his offryng after hym by the cursyng of god  
and his owne fadre adam **C**And Seth Was made a gen-  
tilman thowþ his fadres and moderis blisseyng . **A**nd of the  
offryng of Seth Moë come a gentilman by kynd  
**C**Moë had . iii . sonnys begetyn by kynd . by the modre . ii .  
Were named Cham and Sem . and by the fadre the thirde Was  
namyd Iafeth . Wit in theys . iii . sonnys gentilnes and con-  
gentilnes Was founde **C**In cham vngentilnes Was founde  
to his owne fadre won to discouer his pteuydes and laugh  
his fadre to scorne **C**Iafeth Was the yongist and repreued  
his broþre . Then like a gentilman take mynde of Cham . for  
his vngentilnes he Was become a churle : and had the cursyng  
of god and his fadre Moë . **A**nd whan Moë alboke he sayde  
to Cham his sonne : knolbyst nott thowþ hoo hit become of

**C**ayn Adam soon : and of his churlish blode . All the Worlde  
is drobnde saue Ie . viij . And nold of the to begynne sangen  
tilnes and a cause to destroye vs all : vpon the hit shall be &  
so I pray to god that it shall fall . Nold to the I gyue my  
curse Wyched knyfis for eu . and I gyue to the : the north parte  
of the Worlde to dralbe thyng habitation for ther shall it be .  
Where sorow and care calde and myschef as a churle tholb  
shall haue . in the thirde parte of the Worlde whiche shall be calde  
Europe that is to say the conterre of churlyng .

**C**Jaſeth eu heder my sonne tholb shall haue my blissing  
dere i ſte de of Seth Adam ſon I make the a gentleman to the Weſte  
parte of the Worlde . and to the occident ende : Where as Welch  
and gracie shall be . ther thyng habitation ſhall be . to take that other  
therde parte of the Worlde whiche ſhall be calde asia that is to say  
the conterre of gentilmen .

**C**And Sem my ſon alſo a gentleman I the make to multipli  
abellis blode that ſo Wyklakeli Was fleyng . the oyente tholb that  
take that other therde parte of the Worlde whiche ſhall be calde affri  
ca . that is to ſay the conterre of tempurnes .

**C**Of the offryng of the gentleman Jaſeth come Habraham  
Moyſes Aron and the profetys . and alſo the kyng of y<sup>e</sup> right  
lyne of mary . of whom that gentleman Ihesus Was borne very  
god and man : after his manhode kyng of the londe of Jude &  
of Iues gentleman by is modre mary pryncipe of Cote armure .

**H**ow longe Cote armures wer begunne afore  
thyngcacion of oure lord Ihesu cryst .

**I**aſeth made firſt Garget and ther in he made a batt in token

of all the Worlde . and afterwarde . iij<sup>o</sup> . yere and . xxvij . before  
thyncarnation of Criste : Cote armure was made . and figureid  
at the sege of troye wher in gestys troianorum it tellith thatt  
the first begynnyng of the lalbe of armys was . the Whiche was  
effugured and begunne before any lalbe in the Worlde . bwt the  
lalbe of nature . and before the . p . comalbndementis of god

**A**nd thys lalbe of armys was groundid upon the . ix . or .  
drys of angelis in heuen enclosid with . ix . dyueris precious  
stonys of colubris and of vertuys dyueris . also of them ar fi:  
gurid the . iv . colouris in armys . as in nouimbre to begynne . the  
first stonye is callid Topasyon

### **T**rimy lapis

The first stonye is calde Topasyon signifying  
golde in armys .

**A**This stonye Topasyon is a semy stonye . and golde it is cal:  
de in armys . The vertue ther of is : thatt the gentylman the Whi:  
che thys stonye in his cote armure berith a faire messangere in his  
kyngly batayll shal be . The Whiche stonye is refused in the angelis  
cowlone that was a trule massanger and a succ in his kyngly ba:  
tayll of heuen whan they fraught with Lucifer

### **S**ecundy lapis

The secunde stonye is cald Smaragdus a graule  
ly stonye signifying vert in armys

**A**The secunde stonye is calde Smaragdus a grauell stonye . &  
vert it is calde in armys . The vertu ther of is : thatt the gentyl  
man the Whiche in his cote armure it berith kene and hardy in his

kynḡ batayl shal be . the Wiche stone is reserved in tharchangel  
les crobne that was kene and hardy in his kyngis batayle of he:  
uen whan they gaught with lucifer

### **T**ercius lapis

**A**nd this ston̄ is calde brush̄ colore i armys

**T**he thirde ston̄ is calde an Ametise a dusketli ston̄ brush̄  
hit is calde in armys . The vertu ther of is : that by the Wiche be:  
with in his Coteazmure that stone . fortunable of victori i his bi:  
ges batayl shal be . the Wiche stone is reserved to the vertulys  
crobne that was fortunable and victoriolys in his kynḡ batayl  
of heuen whan they gaught with Lucifer

### **Quartus lapis**

**A**nd this ston̄ is calde plub̄y color i armys

**T**he . iiiij . ston̄ is calde a Margarete a clobbdy ston̄ of plum:  
by hit is calde in armys . The vertue ther of is . What gentilman  
that i his Coteazmure that ston̄ berith grete goūnaunce of chi:  
ualrie in his kyngys batayl he shal haue . the Wiche stone is res:  
ued in the potestatis crobne that was cheualries of goūnaunce  
in his kyngys batayl of heuen whan they gaught with Lucifer

### **Quintus lapis**

**A**loys is calde sinamer or sanquine i armys

**T**he . v . ston̄ is calde a Lloys . a sanquine ston̄ or sinamer  
hit is calde in armys . The vertue ther of is : the gentilman thatt  
in his Coteazmure this ston̄ berith myghtfull of polver in his  
kyngys batayl shal be . the Wiche stone was reserved in domina

cionys crobne that was myght full of powere in his kyngys bataylt  
of heyn. Whan they gaught with Lucifer

### Sextus lapis

**C** And thys stone is calde gowlys in armys

**C** The . viij . stone is calde a Ruby a redly stone . gowlys  
it is calde in armys . the vertue therof is . the gentylman that i  
his Cotearmure that stone berith hote and full of corage in his  
kyngys bataylt shall be . the Witch stone is reserved in the princi  
patis crobne that was hote brinnyng as fire in his kyngys ba  
taylt of heyn. Whan they gaught with Lucifer

### Septim⁹ lapis

**C** A blue stome it is . it is cald asure i armys

**C** he . viij . stone is calde a Saphyre a blewe stone Asure hit  
is calde in armys . The vertue therof is . the gentylman that in  
his Cotearmure berith that stone : Wyse and vertues in his her  
kyng in his kyngy bataylt shall be . the Witch is reserved to knyng  
crobne that was Wyse and vertues in his kyngys bataylt of he  
yn. Whan they gaught with Lucifer

### Ottau⁹ lapis

**C** This stome is blake and it is called Sabull

**C** The . viij . ston is a Dymond a blake stone . Sable it  
is calde in armys . The vertue therof is . What gentylman that i  
his Cotearmure that stone berith : durable & confaynt in his  
kyngys bataylt he shall be . The Witch stone was reserved i the  
chetybysns crobne that was durable & confaynt in his kyngys  
bataylt of heyn . Whan they gaught with Lucifer.

**C** ix<sup>9</sup> lapis  
**C** Wshynng ston and is calde Siluer i armys

**T** he . ix . stone is calde Carbuncle a shynng stone . Silu  
hit is calde in armys . The vertue therof is : That gentilman ye  
m his Cotearmure this stone berith . fift doughty glorious &  
shynng in his kyngys bataylt he shall be . The Wch stone was  
reserued in the Seraphyns cōlone : that was fift doughty glouy  
& shinig i his kyn bataylt of hryvn whan thi foughht W<sup>c</sup> Lucifer

**C** Of the diuse coloreis for the feld of cotearmu  
ris . v . bene worthy and . iiiii . bene Royall

**T** Her be . ix . dyuse coloris for the feld of Cotearmuris v  
Worthy & . iii . Royall . The v . Worthy be theys : Gol  
de Verre Gusk Plumby & Synam . And the . iii . Royall  
be theys : Golblis Ause Sable & Siluer Bot nold ast bla  
seris of armys ther be bot . vi . coloris of ye Wch . ii . be metatt &  
iii . coloris . Golde & Silu for metatt . Vert Goulis Ause &  
Sabult for coloris . & theys be vsid and no moo .

**C** Of nine preci<sup>9</sup> stonis . v . be noble & . iiiii . of dig

**C** Ther be . ix . precious stony . v . noble & . iii . of dignite  
The . v . noble stony be theys Topasion Smaragmat Alma  
tise Margaret & Alloys . The . iii . of dignite be theys Rubi  
Saphyr Diamond and Carbuncle

**C** Of thorderis of angelis . v . be ierarch & . iiiii . trō

**T** her be . ix . ordys of angelis . v . Ierarchie . & . iii . Trōly

**T**he v. Tierarchye be theys : Angelis Archangelis virtutes  
Hostestates & dominacioes The . iii . Cronli be theys Princi;  
þat9 Crony Cherubyn and Seraphyn .

## **C**v. of the dignites of regalite be noble n . iv . n c

**C**hry be . iv . dignites of Regalite . v . noble and . iii . ex  
cellent The . v . noble be theys Gentilma Squier knyght Ba  
ron and Lorde . And . iii . excellēt be theis Earle March Du  
ke and Pryne

## **D**yne vertues of preci9 stony

**D**yne vertues of preci9 stony ben ther . v . generall and  
iii . speciall The v . generall ben theys A sure messenger Kene  
& hardy fortunat of victori Chualry of goūnance & myghti;  
full of powre The . iii . speciall be theis : hote of corage Wyse &  
redy & vertues in Werkyng Durable & confaynt full doughti &  
gloriosse shynynge .

## **C**The . iv . vertues of cheualry

**R**Obte vertues of cheualry ben ther : The first is iuste in  
his beestis . cleynes of his psone . peti to haue of the poore . to be  
gracious to his preson . to be reuerent and faythfull to his god  
The secunde is that he be Wyse i his bataill . prudent i his fightig  
knolwyng & hauyng mynde i his battis . The . iii . is y<sup>e</sup> he be nott  
floslo i his Weris loke be fore y<sup>e</sup> his q̄ill be true thanke god e  
uer of his victory & for to haue mesure i his sustināce . The . ii .  
is to be strōg & stedfast i his goūnace . to hope to haue y<sup>e</sup> victory

And vode not frome the felde and not to shame his cole armur . Also that he be not to boostfull of his manhood Loke that he be curtes lollly and gentill and with olde rebaldry in his langage .

**H**ere shall be shewed the . ix . artikulis of gentilnes . v of them ar amorows and iii souerayn

**C**her be . ix . artycles of gentilnes . and of theym . v . bene amorolds . and . iii . soueren . The . v . amoroldis gentilneses ben thees Lordeli of colbntenalunce Treteable in langage Wyse in his anslibete Perfite in gouernalunce . and Cherefull to faythfulnes . The . iii . souerayn gentilneses ben theis Selbe othes in silberyng . Bopom to goddis byddyng . Kno; dyng his olde birth in beryng . and to dredre his souerayn to offende .

**C**her be ix . vices contrary to gentilmen

**C**her ben . ix . vices contrari to gentilmen of the Wiche . v . ben indeterminable and iii . determinable The . v . indeterminable ben theys : oon to be full of slowthe in his weras . an other to be full of boost in his manhode . the thide to be full of colbardenes to is enemy . the saurth to be full of lechri i his body . & the fiftthe to be full of drynkynge & dronckunli . Thez be . iii . determinable : on is to reuoke is olde chalange . an other to slep his presoner with his olde handis . the thide to boyde from his soueraygnes baner in the felde . and the fiftthe to tell his soueraygne fals talys

**C**her be . ix . iestimable reioyngis in armys

**C**her . ix . iestimable reioyngis of armys ben theys .

**E**nse is a gentleman to be made a knyght i the felde at batall

**C** The secunde is lyuelode of hym to resayne after manhode  
**T**he . iij . is chualry to do by fore his souerayn **C** The . iii .  
is ambassatt to be put in his honde for wisdom . **C** The . vi . is  
proues of knyghthode done be fore alioundis i honor of renollone .  
**C** Thys be calde in armys the . v . autentylke Now folowith  
the . iii . endyng stempyllis personall **C** The first is a pou  
re knyght to be maried to the blode Royalt **C** The secunde is  
to haue thanke of his souereyn perpetuall . **C** The . iij . is to  
kepe his Cote armure conshampyd in tract **C** And the . iii .  
is to kepe all peynlis of is knyghthod as gestys twianorum de  
clarith .

**K**naw ye that theis ii . orderis wer . first wedlok  
& then knyghthode . and knyghthode was made be  
fore Cote armure was ordened .

**C** Ther was non order bot . ij . Wedloke first and knyghthod  
after . A knyght was made before ony cote armure . and O  
lybion was the first knyght that euer was . A steriali his fader  
come bi the right lyne of that gentilman Jafeth and sole the pe  
ple multiplie & had no gouernour And the cursed peple of Sem  
wered ayenys them Olibion was the stryngest and the mansul  
lest man in his tyme And the peple cried on Olibion to be theyr  
maister and their gouerner A thowsand men wer than multipli  
ed of Jafethis lyne . A steriali made to his son a garlande a  
bolde his hede of . ix . diueris preciouse stonyngs in tokenyng of  
chualry to be a gouerner of a . M . men . & onto thys same day y<sup>e</sup>  
knyght haue his name i late y<sup>e</sup> is as moch to saye gouernor . i<sup>m</sup> . me

Olibion knelyd to Asterpall his fader and askyd his blis-  
syng . Asterpall toke Olibions silvere that was 3 a fetheris  
fablechon that Cuball made be fore the floode : and smote flat  
lyng . ip . tymeys oppon the ryght shulde of Olibion in toke-  
nyng of the ip . vertuys of the forsayde precious stonyngs and  
gave him his blessing With a charge to kepe the . ip . vertuys  
of charite nolle foloyng as ye shall heye .

**T**heis be the charges or artikelis that every  
knyght shlude kepe by the dignyte of his order &  
they be ix . v . tempall and iii goostly

**T**her be . v . temperall utesys & . iii . goostly utesys of charite  
the . v . tempall vertuys be theys . he shall not turne his backe  
to his enemy for to flee . The . ii . is that he shall truly holde  
his promyse to his frende : and also to his foo . The . iiii . is  
he shall be free of mete and drinke to all his meny a boute him  
The . iii . is he shall vpholde maydonys ryght . The . v . is  
that he shall holde vpon wydys ryght . Thys be the . iii . vertu-  
ys of charite goostly . The first is : he shall honoure his fa-  
der and his moder . The . ii . is he shall do noon harme to the  
poore . The . iii . is he shall be mercifull . The . iii . is he shall  
holde With the sacrifice of the grete god of huyn . And than  
Asterpall did make to Olibion a targett of Olyfe tree With  
iiij . corneris . ii . a bouen is face and oon dolone to the grobnd  
warz . in tokenyng that thys Olibion was the cleue of all

the blode of th. ij. sonnys of Moy By the Olif tree he wender  
steode witerly for to byn By the wynt of his target to the gro;  
Wonde the cursed brothir Cham By the corner of his target a  
boun furthest that other brothir Sem . That other corner  
next to hym selfe betokenyth that gentylman Iaseth the blis-  
sed brothir of Whome god and man come by right lyne

**A** The maner of knyghthodes ben. ii. oon with  
the Swerde An other with the Bath

**T**her be. ij. maner of knyghthodes oon with the swerde and  
an other with the bath The bath is the Workest by cause of  
iij. Royalties . Oon is whan an sonaged prynce is made kny-  
ght or be crowned kyng The secunde is whan a kyng or an  
Emperoure is crowned . The thyrde is whan a quene or an  
Emperis is crowned . The iiii. is whan a kyng or an Em-  
peroure cum to speke with an other of dyuerse londys

**D**yne maner of gentylmen ther bene

**A** Ther is a Gentylman of Gluncetre and of blode

**A** And ther is a Gentylman of blode

**A** Ther is a Gentylman of Cootearmur : and theos be. ij.  
Oon of the kyngys bage . An other of a lordeship . And  
the therde is of the kylyng of a Sarpon

**A** And ther is a gentylman contrayall

**A** And ther is a gentylman Mperofet

**A** And ther is a gentylman Speyntuall

**A** Ther is also a gentylman speyntuall and temperall , and  
all theys ben more playnly declared in thyse booke

## **G**entilmen be calde. iiiij. maner of wyle one of awncetreis and iii of Cotarmure

**G**her be .iiiij. diuerse maner of gentilmen . On his a gentyl; man of awncetres : Which muste nedis be a gentilman of blode .  
**G**her be .iiij. gentilmen of Cotarmure and not of blode On is a gentylman of Cotarmure of the gynges bagge . that is to say his deuice by an herald I gounen . An other gentilman of Cotarmure is and not of blode a kyng geuyng a lordshipp to a yoman vnder his seall of patent to hym and to his eyrys for euer more he may beere a Cotarmure of the same lordshipp

The thridis his a yoman cristenyd yif he kille a gentylman so syn he may beere the sarsynys Cotarmure and noo sarsyn a sarsynys cotarmure nethir cristenys cotarmure bi feghtyng in noo Byse Mit sum men say that a cristen man ouercomyng a cristen man feghtyng in the list shal beere the cotarmure of him that is ouer comyn . Or if a souereyn kyng make of a yoman a knyght that same knyght is a gentylman of blode by the roialte of the kyng and of knyghthood

## **A**gentylman spirituall

**G**her is a gentylman a churle sone a preste to be made and that is a spirituall gentylman to god and not of blode . Butt if a gentylmannys sone be made preste he is a gentilman both spirituall and temperall . Criste was a gentilman of his moder be halue and bare cotarmure of cumseturis . The .iiiij. Evangelist berith witnessesse of Cristis Warrys in the gospel . With all thap postilles . They were Yelbys and of gentylmen come by the right lyne of that Worlhy queuerour Judas machabeus bot that by suc cession of tyme the kynrade fel to pouerty . after the destruction

of Judas Machabeus and then they feld to laboris & Ware cal;  
de no gentilmen. and the . iii . doctoris of holi chirch Seynt Je;  
rom Ambrose Augustyn and Gregori War gentilmen of blos  
and of cotarmures

**A**Also the diuisionys of cotarmuris be . ix . thatt  
is to witt . v . perfyte and . iv . unperfyte

**T**her be . ix . diuisionis of cotarmures . v . perfite & . iv .  
unperfite . The . v . perfite be theys Ternynall Colla  
terall Abstrakte Fixall and Bastard .

### **A**Diferens Enbordyng

**A**Ternynall is calde in armys all the bretheren of right ly;  
ne hehir by sadre or by modee may bere the right kynges cotamz;  
ure with a differens calde Enbordyng

### **A**Dyffereans Jemews

**A**Collaterall is calde in armys the sonnys of the bretheren  
of the right kyng berynge the cotarmuris of theyz sadris with a  
dyfferans Jemellos

### **A**Diferens molet

**A**Fixall in armys is calde the thirde degré by the rightly;  
ne from the right kyng by line male . they may bere therre sa;  
datis cole armure with a differans molet

### **A**Diferans countertenis

**A**The basarde of fixall shall bere his sadris cotarmure co;  
untertenis . that is to say what so euer he berith in his felde he  
shall bere in the coloris dyuerse and no more .

**H**ow ther be. iiiii. cotarmurys imperfite and be  
boryn wþth oþre differans

**T**her be. iiiii. cotarmuris imperfite: andy be borne wþth oþre  
differance. The first cotarmure is if a lordshipp a forte sayde be  
gouen vnder patent bi the kyng. and if he die wþthoute heyr his  
cotarmure is 3 don.

**C**The secunde is the cotarmure of the kyng gyf he dye  
wþth oþre heyr his cotarmure is done. and gyf theys. iiij. cotarmuris  
haue wþsshelb forth: the fith degree of cheam bering lyne by  
male be gentilmen of blode by lalbe of armys.

**C**The thorde cotarmure of the Sarbyn gyf the cristen man  
dye wþth oþre wþsshelb his cotarmure is done. and if he had wþs-  
helb forth vnto the fith degree from him by right lyne of wþs-  
helb male he is a gentylman of blode

**C**The falleþith cotarmure of the cheue blode gyf he dye wþth oþre  
one wþsshelb the hole cotarmure is lost than it fallith to be a  
cotarmure of thympferfe beryng wþth a differans

**C**All the bastardis of all cotarmuris shall here a fesse Si-  
call hit a baston of oon of the. iiiii. dignites of colouris. excepte  
the bastarde of the signales and the bastarde of the breþyngis of  
the cheue blode wherethe inheritance is depar ded to eþch broþir e-  
like moþ theys bastardis shall adde more bagy to his armys  
or take a way a bagy of armys

**N**ote here well who shall gyue cotarmures

**C**Ther shall none of the. iiii. ordutis of regalite bot all onli  
the souereigne kyng geue cootarmuris. for that is to hym impro-

perid bi lalbe of armys . And yet the kyng shal nott make a  
knyght with oþre a cootarmure by fore .

**E**xþ knyght chescayn iþ the felde mai make a cootarmur knight

**I**n how many places a knyght may be made

**A** Knyght is made in . v . dyuerse placis In musturyng in  
londe of Berriis . In Semblyng vnder baneris . In lislys of  
the bath And at the sepulcru

**C**A lassed cootarmure is on the moderis parte

**C**A lassed cootarmure is calde the coote of a gentylwoman  
houyng lyuelode weddyd to a man hauyng noo cootarmure .  
his sone may bere his cootarmur with a differance of armys  
durynge his liue by the curtesy of lalb of armys . and his sone  
shalt none bere bot so be that the gentylwoman be heyr or neyt of  
blode to that cootarmure . Or ellis beyng his byrth of the blode  
Royall and than shall his heye bere his cootarmure

**H**ow Gentyll men be made of Gromis that be  
nott of cootarmure neþer blode and they be cald  
untriaall and apocrifate as hit shewyth folowing

**T**her be . ii . dyuerse Gentylmen made of gromys : that be nott  
gentylmen of cootarmure norþer of blode . On is calde in armis  
a gentylman contriatt that is to say made vpon emong reli-  
gious men as priorys Abbottis or Bisshoppis . That other  
is called in armys a gentyl man apocrifate that is to say ma-

de vpp and gouyn to him the name and the lyueray of a gentyl:  
man .

**C**In armys be vi. differenes that is to say ii.  
for excellent and iii. for nobullys

**T**her be . vi. Differenes in armys . iij : for the excellent .  
and . iii . for the nobles . Label and Emborduryng for lordis .  
Temeles Moletys fflobre delyce and Quynisfoples for thee  
nobles .

**I**n blasynge of armys be . ix . quadratis that is  
to say . v . quadrate finiall and iii . Royall

**I**n blasynge of armys ther be . ix . quadratis for to con-  
sider . v . quadrate finiall and . iii . Royall . Ifye qua-  
drate finiall be theyz . Seuer . Secundi . Fretly . Gerally . and  
Endently .

**C**Severi is called in armys whan cootarmuris ar . ix quare-  
teris dyuerse coloubris .

**C**Secundi is called in armys whan the cootarmure is of . ix .

dyuerse coloubris : þe a fusiarget with in the cootarmure of whatt  
coloubre that hit be of

**C**Fretly is calde in armys whan the cootarmure is counteresid

**C**Gerally is calde in armys whan the cootarmure is powderd  
þot a blaisar shal not say he berith Ermen . Siluer powderd  
with Ermen þot he shal not say he berith Ermen or ellis in sume  
armys he muste say demy Ermen : whic h is to sai whitli Ermen

**I**n so moch that i the fisthe quadrate finall hit is determyned  
of the tokenys of armys . or I procede to hit : is shewed what  
maner of tokeny a gentylt man may wear .

**A** gentilman mai not wear tokenys of armys bot of steinig  
coloure . that is to say his coftarmure ynyat or ellis I geratt  
With preciouſe stonyſ

**G**erallyng haue . ip . bagges of coftarmuris . First With cros  
lettis . and of theym ther be . in . dyuerſe . and tho bene theys  
Cros fiply . Cros paty Cros croslettis . and Cros florly

**C**The ſecunde baige is florblc delyce .

**C**The threde baige is roslettys

**C**The folvrich baige is pyrmaroſe .

**C**The firſthe baige is quynfolis .

**C**The ſeuenthe baige is diaclys

**C**The ſeuenth baige is chappelettys

**C**The . viij . baige is Molettys .

**C**And the . ip . baige is Cressauantis . that is to ſay halle the  
moone . theys be polderygis of coftarmuris .

**C**The firſthe quadrat is calde Endently of . in . diuſe Weys  
that is to ſay betally lentally and fyſely .

**C**Bebally is calde i armys than a coftarmure is calde En  
dentyd of . in . dyuerſe coloures in the length of the coftarmure

**C**Lentally is calde in armys than y<sup>e</sup> coftarmure is Endentid  
With . in . dyuerſe coloures in the berde of the coftarmure

**C**Fyſely is called in armys . in . manere Weys Fyſy bagy  
fysy target and fysy generallt .

**E**sty bagy is whan tokenys of armys be disseuert from the cheef of the cootarmure to the right splexer in the felde

**E**sty target is whan a scogion or an engislet is made in the myddell of the cootarmure.

**E**sty generall is calde in armys whan the cootarmure is endentid with .ij. dyuerse colouris from the laste poynt of the cootarmure to the splexer

**T**he chefe is calde in armys the myddes of the cootarmure of the right syde.

**Q**uadrat is calde in armys whan the felde is set with sum tokyn of armys.

**Q** A quadrant finall is called in armys whan the felde is discolourid with tokenis of armys hauyng no beest in the felde.

**A** Quadrant Royall is calde whan the felde occupeth y<sup>e</sup> token of a beest or ony other tokyn set with in the cootarmure to the nombre of fiue.

**C** The first quadrant is oon tokyn of armys allonli sett and whatt after his byrthe he becith.

**C** The secunde quadrant Royall is berynge in his cootarmur in .iiij. shyngh calde the tokenys of armys. that is to say .iiij. floob : redelice in fylcials .iiij. rosis .iiij. chapplettis .iiij. lebardis .iiij. lyongys . and so thys .iiij. quadrat Royall is to bere a beest Raun : pande : bebaly : lentaly . and fessely .

**H** ere shall be shewed what Cootarintis restray : al ben and weir the blaser shall begyn to blase .

**T**hre cootarmuris be ther called restyalt in armys .  
**C**on is whan a cootarmure is barri of dyuerse coloures  
to the poyn . and what coloure the poyn be of . the poyn is the  
felde . Ther the blaser shal begynne .

**C**he secunde cootarmure restrialt is calde i armys whan  
a cootarmure is paly of dyuerse colouris to the poyn . & what  
pole medyll in the poyn y<sup>e</sup> colour is the felde The blaser shal  
blase from that coloure to the nexte colour pale .

**C**he threde cootarmure restrialt is calde in armys whan a  
cootarmure is sentry of dyuerse coloures to the poyn and what  
settre mydyll in the poyn y<sup>e</sup> coloure is the felde . The blasayz  
shal blase from y<sup>e</sup> coloure to the nexte coloure of the lefte side  
of the cootarmure and blase the coloure sentry .

**M**erke what sentre fijal mangis gorgis &c o  
ther diuerse here now . folowynge be calde i armys

- C** Sentre in armys is called stakaz of tentis .
- C** Fijialt be called in armys mylner pykes .
- C** Mangys be called in armys a sleue .
- C** Gorgys be called in armys Water bulges .
- C** Elynellis be calde in armys . iii . quadrantis tuncolis .
- C** Oglys be calde in armys gonestonys .
- C** Corlettis be calde in armys Bastell .
- C** Diaclys be called in armys scopprellys .

**C**Myris be calde in armys metoluris or glasses.

**C**Feons be calde in armys brode arorb hdyrs.

**C**Tronkys be calde in armys any bestys heide or neck Ikyt  
magikli a sonder.

**C**Demys be calde in armys halfe a best in the felde.

**C**Countretruis is calde in armys Whan halfe the best is of  
oon coloure and that other halfe of an other coloure

**C**Eny cotarmure that berith a crosse to the poynt : the poynt  
te is the felde. as Seynt George berith gollis folbre anglettis  
of Siluer . bot aypens this rule sum blaseris of armys repugne  
as hit is shewed in the boke foloyng .

**C**This . iij . termys . of . and . Whith shall not be rehersed in  
armys bot onys any of thaym

### **C**Other be diuersle beryngys of feeldys

Opuerse beryngis of feeldis ther be **C**On is beryng hole  
felde . hit is clepyd in armis claury

**C**The secunde is beryng too feldis . hit is calde in armis Coucli

**C**The threde is beryng too feldis in . iiiij . quarteris : hit is  
calde in armys quarilly

### **C**Other bene . iii . cote armurys gryfty

Three cotarmuris gryfty ther bene in armys . On is cal-  
led chechy that is Whan the felde is chykred Whith diuse colouris

**C**The secunde is calde Wyndi that is to say Whan the felde is  
made like Walvis of oon coloure or of diuerse colouris

**C**he shade is calde berry whan the felde is made like go  
toletys of dyuerse coloris.

**I**n armys be ii. pinyonys . also it shewys waf  
clawry counterly and quarterly bene with other

**C**her be in armys calde . ii . pynyonys Oon is whan the  
feeld his a saltrei . Segnt and celrys crosse may be clauric  
unterly quarterly . Clauir is called playn of oon colour .  
Colbterly is whan colours quarterly be . ii . colours sett  
in . ii . quarteris

**C**he secunde pynyon is called cheffrounce that is a couple  
of spatis . and that may be clauir counterly quarterly gereri  
and byally .

**C**Gereri is whan . ii . cheffrounce be to gedur or moo .

**C**Gyall is called whan a barre is be cloene . ii . cheffrounce

**H**ere endeth the mooste speciall thyngys of the boke of the  
lynage of Cooke armuris and hys gentylmen shall be know  
yn from songentylmen . and nold here foloyng begynnyng the  
boke of blasynge of all man armys : i latyn french & English

**C**Explicit prima pars.





## Here begynnyth the blasynge of armys

**H**au shewyd to yow in thys booke a foore holt gentilme  
began. and holt the law of armys was first ordant. and  
holt moni coloures ther be in coatarmuris . and the difference of  
coatarmuris with mony other thynggis that lyre needis not to  
be rehersed . Now I intende to procede of signys in armys and  
of the blasynge of all armys . Bot for to rehers all the signys  
that be borne in armys as hecok ppe Bac Dragon Lyon &  
Dolfin and florris and leuys it war to longe a tariyng .  
ne I can not do hit : ther be so mony . Bot here shall shorthly be  
shewyd to blase all armys if ye entende diligentli to youte cu-  
lys . And be cause the cros is the moost worthi signe emong al  
signys in armys : at the cros I witt begynne . in the whiche thys  
nobust andy myghti prynce kyng Arthur hadde grete trust so  
that he lefte his armys that he bare of . in . Dragonys . and ou  
that an other shelde of . in . crobonyngs . and toke to his armys  
a crosse of Siluer in a feilde of vert . and on the right side an  
ymage of olde blessed lady with hir sone in hir arme . and w<sup>e</sup>  
that signe of the cros he dyd mony maruelis after . as hit is  
writyn in the bookis of cronyclyngis of his dedys Also I haue red  
thys signe of the cros to be sende from god to that blessed man  
Mercuri as Vincencius sayth . in speculo historiali . of the mar-  
uellis deth of Julian thappostita Empoure . li<sup>o</sup> . xvi<sup>o</sup> . he saythe  
changel broughton to the foresaid Mercuri all  
armure necessari with a shelde of asute andy a  
cros flur with . in . cosis of golde . as heret is this  
And I fonde never that euer any armys wa<sup>r</sup>  
sende from hyn bot in theym was the sygne of  
the cros . Exceptid in thair armys of the kyng of fr-  
ance the whiche armys certanli war sende bi an alengelt from he-  
yn that is to say . in . florris in maner of Silverdis in a feld



of assure . as hit shalbe here . the Kich certan ar  
mys ware geupn to the forsayd kyng of Fraunce  
in sygne of euerlastynge troublust and that he  
and his successaries all way with batayl and swer  
reddys shulde be punysshid .



## I aske here moo questionis of the crossis signe

**N**ow I turne agayne to the signe of the cros and aske a  
question : how mony crossis be borne in armys . to the Kich quest  
tion vnder a certan nombur I dare not answeire . for crossis  
mnumerabut ar borne nold dayli . bot decydynge to euery cros  
the Kich a fore tyme I haue seen as fer as I can I entende to  
descriue . emong the Kich first the playn cros shall be desribed of  
the Kich cros moo dolotis be made then of mony odyr crossies .  
for as moch as Wyse men in blasynge of armys holde for a re  
gi rule that ye moost begynne to blase at the londyst poynct of the  
sheelde . if the poynct be of con coloure . and so that coloure thatt  
is in the poynct of the sheelde is the felde of the armys

**C**Bot in that rule to remeue a way all dolotis ye most mer  
ke diligently : that . that rule is true With a littyll addicion . p  
is to wite that in armys to be blased it is all way to begynne  
at the poynct of the sheelde : if the poynct be of con coloure thatt is  
true : if the coloure of the poynct be more copiose or gretter in thos  
armys . and then With oþre dolote ye shalt begyn ther . or el  
lyȝ not **C**And ther the colores be equall p̄t̄d other on len  
gth or overwartz then euermore ye shalt begynne to blase thoos  
armys in the right side . and in that case ye shalt haue no respe  
cte to the poynct .

**C**And iff it be asked how berith Seynt george . it is to be

knalb that ye most say . latine . **C** portat v;  
num scutum de argento cum quadam cruce plana  
de rubro . **C** Gallice . Il port dargent song crois  
playn de goblez . **C** Anglice . He beris a fel  
de of Siluer with a playn crois of goldes . as he  
re apperith in theys armys .



**A**nd the same maner of Wyse ar att crossis hauyng a playn  
crois to be blasid Therfore thay er : y<sup>e</sup> say Seynt george beris  
the felde of gobles with . iiiij . quarteris of Siluer of Bohome the  
resonis I tolde not . for by thos resonis a playn crois shulde ne  
ver be founde in armys ner helpe no differens in armys .

**C**Off an crois of an equall length on euery parte .

**A**playn crois is founde in armys differyng from the first  
crois . and hit is of an equall length on euery parte as it ap  
perith here . and theys armys be harder then the o;  
ther to blasid as hit is oppn . for therdyng of thys  
crois tolde is not the hemmynge or the rotter parte of y<sup>e</sup>  
sheelde i no parte in whiche ye shall say that he : that  
beris theis armys . latine . sic **C** Ille portat de  
auro cum una cruce plana aurea equalis longi;  
tudinis ep omni parte **C** Gallice . Il port daser song crois pla;  
gn dung longur p totte . **C** Anglice . He berith a ferme with a  
playn golden crois of equall length on euery parte . And this is  
the differans in blasydng . that all therdyngs of thys crois arne of e  
quall length the whiche mai not be in the playn crois a fote . for the  
foote is the longest parte . and hit be well made . And this diffe



renz shal appere bettz in a cootarmute : then it doth in a sheld  
e so ther is an euydent differens be thwip y<sup>e</sup>. h. crossis aforaid

## C Off a playn cros strayle .

**G**Her is an oder cros aquall straylyz in the myddis then  
in thendys with oppyn corneris as here not touchyng the  
outerist parte of the sheld in any parte ther of .  
and hit is calde a cros patent . And ye shal say  
that he the Wiche beris this cros beris i this man .  
**C** latine sic . Ille portat vonam crucem argenta :  
tam patentem in campo nigro . **C** Gallice . Il  
port de sable vng cros pattee dargent . **C** Angli  
ce sic . He berith Sable a cros paty of Siluer .



## C Off a cros patent fixibylt .

**G**His cros patent is made dyuerse in the foote of the same  
as hit apperis here . And then hit is calde a cros pattee  
fixible . for i the erthe sych a cros may be ppocheit .  
in the Wiche cros . in . of the heyl parts ar oppyn  
in the corneris and bradder than in the myddys . e  
his foote is dispositid to pithe i the erthe . latine .  
**C** Ille portat de rubio cum vena cruce figurata  
de albo **C** Gallice . Il port de gullis vng cros  
pattee fishe dargent . **C** Et anglice . He berith Gullys and  
a cros paty fixibylt of Siluer . And knalbe ye that ther be mo  
ny crossis the wiche may be maaide fixibylt as hit shal be sheld  
here folowing in dyuerse .



## Off a playn cros cordyd.

**E**Mong odys crossis oon is soimde the Wiche is calde a cord  
did cros as here it is shewed i this cros the Wiche is cal  
de a corddid cros : for hit is made of cordys . the  
Wiche certan cros I se bott late : in tharmys of a  
nobult man : the Wiche in very deed was summe ty  
me a crafty man a Roper as he hym selfe sayd .  
And ye shalst say of him that heith theys armys  
latine **C**Il portat goldilles cum una cruce  
plana cordata de argento . Gallice sic . **C**Il port de goullez  
& vng cros playn cordee dargent . Anglice sic . **C**He heith  
gullis and a cros playn cordyd of Syluer .



## Off a cros playn pforatid .

**T**her is an odys cros playn the Wiche meruelly fro the  
playn cros of Saynt george differtis . as here apperith .  
And here it is to be merkyd . that thopynyon of  
sum man : sayng is . that theis armys be chekered  
armys . and this oppynyon is vtturli to be repre  
yed for armys may not be chekered bot at the leste  
in the nombur of . iii . and in a grettyz nombur  
they may bele be made . as afterward shall be shew  
ed . Therfor it is to be said . latine sic . **C**Il portat vns  
am crucem argenteam pforatam in campo nigro . Et gallice sic .  
**C**Il port de Sable vng cros dargent ptee . Anglice .  
**C**He heith Sable and a cros perforated of Siluer .



## C Off a besantid cros.

**O**ver theis crossis we haue an odys cros the Wiche I salbe late in tharmpes of a certan Januens as bire it sheldis And this is calde a besant cros for it is made al of besantis . and sych a cros may be made als so ne with lytill calyps as with besantys . for besantys and lytill calyps differ not bot in colore . for besantis be euer of golden coloure . ne the coloure of the besant shall be expressid in blasynge of armes . for it nedis not to say a besant of golde for ther be no besantis bot of golde Therfor it is to be sayd . latine sic . **I**lle portat vnam crucem talentatam in campo rubeo . Gallice sic . **C**Il port de gobles vng cros besantee . Anglice sic . **C**He berith gobles and a cros besantid .



## C Off a eros flurz.

**N**ow folowith an odys cros flurz . the Wiche is so called das hit appetith here . And therfor hit is calde de florish yng cros . for hit has flouris in eueri ende vpon barre that is to say sauie the foote . thys cros flurz sum tyme is borne in armes fipabull . And then it is calde in armes a cros flurz fipabull . for in iiii . of his endys he is florishyng and in the foote pichabull or fipabull . Therfore it is to be sayde of hym that beris hit . latine . **C**Portat vnam cucem auream floridam in campo auro . Et gallice . **I**l port de vng croys flourettee dor . Anglice . **C**He berith a ure and a cros flurz of golde .



**C**Moll herte shall be shewyd of a cros flurri patent i armys

**D**Ob folowith a nod cros the which is called a cros flurri patent . as herc it apperith . And hit is calde a cros flurri patent for he bath his endis oppyn and i y<sup>e</sup> myddys of eueri ende apperith an other thryde in the maner of a flobore as it is oppynli shewed in this cros . Therfore it shall be sayd that the berthe of theys armys : beris in this wyse as foloweth first in latyn thus . **C**Portat unam crucem floridam patentem de auro in campo asueto . Et gallice sic . **I**l port dasor long patee flourete dor . Anglice sic . **C**He berith asure with a cros patent flurri of golde .



**C**We shall understand herc of a playn Wateri cros .

**D**Ore ouer ye shall understande that ther is an oþhere playn cros the which certanly is calde a Wateri cros . and hit is calde a Wateri cros for hit is made bi the maner of Water trolbulled with Wynde . as herc hit shewys i theys armys . Therfor he the which berith theys armys beris in this wyse as it shall folow first in latyn thus . **C**Portat unam crucem planam undosam de argento in campo rubro .

Et gallice sic : **I**l port de goldlez long cros playn vndeargent . Anglice sic . **C**He berith gobles and a playn Wateri cros of Syluer .



**C**Also ther is a cros that is calde inuekþt.

**E**n armys also ar founde meo crossis the Wiche ar made of  
coloribus muelkþt or indentis as here in thys cros apper;  
rith. And it is calde a cros muelkþt for the cau  
se that hit has .n. coloribus .oon put in to an o;  
ther. And of him that beris theys armys ye sh;  
all say first in latyn thus . **C**portat vnam  
cruicem planam mueltam de coloribus altis et in  
gris in campo rubro . Et gallice sic . **C**l  
port de goldlez song cros plagn verce dargent et sable . Anglice .  
**C**He beuth goldles and a cros of Siluer and Sable in;  
uekþt .



**O**ff an other maner cros that is calde a cros croflet .

**D**it folowþt an other cros the Wiche calde a cros crof  
let or croflet . and hit is calde croflet for i curz ende he is  
croflet as here apperis . Bot this cros is not  
so oft borne in armys by him selfe as other crof  
lets neuer the lees mony tymys hit is borne i di;  
wynnutiugs that is to say in littylt crossis croflet  
And ther tha armys ar poloderit with littylt crof;  
lets cruciatit . And ye shalt say thus of hym y<sup>c</sup>  
beris theys armys first in latyn . **I**lle portat vnam cricem  
cruicetam de argento in campo auro . Et gallice sic .



**C**l port dasor song crois croftee dargent . Anglice sic

**C**He beuth ause et a cros croflet of Siluer .

**A**nd whan such crossis ar borne and put i armys as I said

afore i dympnurys & bothe any other nombre then they ar  
called in french Crosletys .

**C**More ouer ther is a cros masculatit as here it folowis .

**M**yth ye well yit y' ther is an other cros the Wyth is cal-  
led a cros masculatit as heire it aperis . And this cros  
is called a cros masculatit for he is made of mas-  
culys of the Wyth certen masculis ye shalt se af-  
terward in the chapitur of suspilis masculis and  
losynrys Where this mater shalt be moor playnli-  
terit . And he that beis thys armes beis as it  
is shewed here after . first in latyn thus .



**C**Portat tonam crucem masculatam de argento in campo a-  
sero . Et gallice sic . **C**Il port doré long cros masculat  
argent . Anglice sic . **C**He beith asure and a cros mascula-  
tit of Syluer .

**C**Also ther is a cros masculatit and perforatit as here .

**C**Eit knowe : that thys cros masculatit sum tyme is pso-  
rate . in the masculys as it is oppn in the persynghe e-  
folowynge . And thus ye most blase hym .

first in latyn in thys Wyse . **I**lle portat tonam  
crucem masculatam perforatam de cubo in scuto  
argento . Et gallice sic . **C**Il port dargent  
long cros de gulle makule psee . Anglice sic .

**C**He beith Siluer With a cros of goldes  
masculatit perfit .



**C**her is a mylneris cros as here it shal be shewed.

**H**ere folowis an other cros the Wiche is calde the cros of a milne for hit is made to the similitude of a cōte instrument of ynglymē in mylnys the Wiche berith the mylne ston by the Wiche instrument: that ston in his cors is boene equally that he declyne not ouer myche on the right pte ner on the lefste parte. bot myniste ryng to eueri parte that: that is his equally and Wiche olde fralode. And thys is geuen to Jugis to bere in theyr armys: and to thos that haue Jurisdiction vnder them. That is to say as the forsayd instrument is directe: to the mylne stone equallly andy Wiche olde gyle. So thos Juges ar bondyn to gyffe equallly to eueri man his right. And it is to be sayd y<sup>e</sup> the possessor of theis armys beris i this Wyse. first i latyn thus:

**P**ortat vnam crucem molte dinatam argenteam in campo tuteo.

Et iam gallice.



**C**Il port goldlez long cros molyne dargent. Anglice.  
**H**e berith goldles and a mylneris cros of Syluer.

**N**ow it shal be shewed of a cros that is turnyt a gagn.

**C**ertain we haue a cros the Wiche is calde a cros turnyt a gagn: and this cros is calde retornt: for the cause y<sup>e</sup> therendys of this cros on eueri side ar retornte agagn bi the maner of a Ramys horne. And by that beris theis armys beris i this Wiche first i latyn thus.

**P**ortat vnam crucem auream in scuto asutro.

Gallice sic.

**C**Il port dorz long cros recerale dor.

Anglice sic.

**C**He beris asure with a cros transversit of golde.



## C Off a cros forkyd.

**A**lder stande ye that ther be other men the which be in  
theys armys a certan forkyd cros as thys is . And hit  
is called forkyd : for as moch as that all then-  
dys of hit ar clouyn and forkyd . Therfore hit  
shalt be sayd of thos men that beris theys armys  
in this Whise . primo latine . **C** portat sonam  
cucum furcatam de auro in campo a sere o .  
Gallice . **I**l port dasor long cros dor .  
Anglice . **C** he berith a sere with a cros forkyd of golde



## C Off a cros engraplid or engradid.

**A**lso ther be certayn nobull men the which be in a cros eng-  
lyd or engraplid . as it apperis here folowynge And  
hit is calde a cros engraplid for hit is not pla-  
yne in ony parte of him bot engraplid also well  
ouer his length as ouer his breed . Neuer the  
lees this engraplyng is no proper langage aftir  
the sight of thys cros : bot rather an endentynge  
as truth is Bot it is the comune maner of spe-  
kyng in theys armys . Therfore ye most say as I sayd a fore .  
And ye shalst say of him that beris theys armys in thys Wy-  
se . First in latyne thus . **P**ortat sonam crucem ingrediatam  
de albo in campo rubro . Et iam Gallice .

**C** Il port de gulyps long cros ingral dargent . Anglice  
**C** He beris goldlys and a cros ingrapled of Syluer .



## ¶ Off a cros entoff.

**I** fynde yet an oþyr cros : the Wiche is borne mony tim; ys i þarmys of nobult men . the Wiche is calde a cros trunckid . And hit is calde trunckatid for hit is made of . n . treys the wrys cut a way . as here . Therfor it is to be sayd that the poffessor of theyps armys beris in latine thus . **C** portat vonam crucem truncatam de argento in campo rubro .



Et gallice . **I** l port de gullez vng cros recopere dargent . Anglice . **C** he beris goddes Wiche a cros trunckid of Siluez .

## ¶ Off a knotty cros.

**R**olwe ye yit after theyps crossis ther is an other cros the Wiche is calde a knotty cros : the Wiche i certan is calde so for hit has in euy ende certan knottis . as here .

And it is to be sayde of hym that beris theyps armys in thyg Wyse . primo latine . **I** pse portat vonam crucem auream nodulatam i scuto auro reo . Et gallice . **C** il port dasor vng cros bone dor . Anglice . **C** he beris asure Wiche a cros knotty of goolde .



And thyg cros is founde other while pyctre or figityue i armys . and then his foote is figityue as I sayd a fore .

## C Off a cros flurri knottid .

**O**ver thies crossis We haue a certan cros flurri of the Wi;  
Och it is spokyn a foore . the Wiche cros flurri is founde  
knotty as here . And that is as I sayd a foore  
Whan knottys ar founde i thendys and the anglis  
of the sayd cros . And the bres of the sayd armys  
latine . **C**portat unam crucem nodulatam flo-  
ridam aurream in campo de asuro . Et gallice sic  
**C**Il port dasor vng cros florere botone dor .  
Anglice . **C**He berith asure and a cros flurri knotty of  
golde .



## C Off a cros dolbbult ptitid .

**A**Cros dolbbult is founde in the armys of dyuerse nobult  
men the wych certain cros is calde a dolbbult ptitid cros .  
For if it be deuydide or partid after the long way  
or the brode way yet ther a bydys on dolbbult cros  
as we may se here . Yet I haue seen many no-  
bult men dolbattyng of thys cros moore then of any  
cros a foore said : the wiche never the lees after long  
disputacionis in thoppymon a foresayd vestid andy  
concludid . Therfore he that beris theys armys . latine sic .

**C**portat unam crucem duplicatam argenteam in campo ni-  
gro . Gallice sie . **C**Il port sable vng cros dolbble petie dor-  
gent . Anglice sic . **C**He berith Sable and a cros dolbble  
petitid of Siluer .



## **C**Off a cros dolble p[er]t[er]id florishid

**T**his cros dolble p[er]t[er]id is varied sum tyme[s]. and then  
hit is called a cros dolble pertid florishid, as here.  
Neuerthel[es] hit is calde a cros flurri impopul[i]e  
as sum men sayen for hit saylith the myddys of that  
flosse as a noon hit shal folde in the nept armis.  
the which certan myddys by no maner of wyse  
in that cros dolble p[er]t[er]id may be. as a noon it  
shal be shewed. **S**ot he that berith theis armis  
latine. **P**ortat venam crucem duplam p[er]t[er]am auream in  
campis tubo. Gallice. **I**l port de gables song cros double  
p[er]tie florete dor. Anglice. **H**e berith gables and a cros  
dolble p[er]t[er]id flurri of golde.



## **C**Off a cros tripartitid florishid.

**B**ut as is shewed a fore this cros is calde a cros dolble  
p[er]t[er]id florishid for ther saylith the myddys of the cros by  
the which the cros florishid is made p[er]site. as here  
hit is opyn. the which certan myddys putt ther to it  
shalt not be called a cros dolble p[er]t[er]id florished  
**S**ot vtheriz it shal be calde a cros threefolde p[er]t[er]id  
flurri. and then it is well blasid. for and it be  
dyuidid after the longnes or after the brodenes.  
all way oon parte shal a byde tripartitid in the myddis of the cros  
as it is opyn i tharmys a fore Britayn. And therfore he that be  
vith theis armis. latine. **P**ortat vna crucem tripartitam de ar  
ge[i] i capo de asuro. Gallice. **I**l port daser song cros trefo  
ys p[er]tie florete dargent. Anglice sic. **H**e berith of asure  
with a cros tripartitid floree of Siluer.



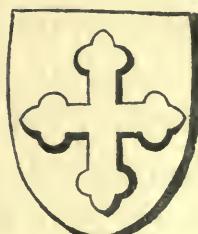
## **C**Off a mynnes cros shadlyd or combratid .

**A**dolte therer is pit of a certayn shadlyb of a mynerys cros as it shewith here folowing . And knal y<sup>e</sup> that it is called a shadlyb of a cros for evermore thys shadlyb is made of blacke coloure . of what sum euer coloure the felde be of . the shadlyb is made of blacke . and the bodi of the same shadlyb is of y<sup>e</sup> same coloure with the felde . **C**And he that be with theys armys . latine . portat sponam crucem combratam in campo quarto . **C**Gallice sic . Il port dor song cros moleyne combre , **C**Anglice . He berith of golde with a mynnes cros combratid or shadlyd .



## **C**Off a cros floree patent combratid .

**A**nothez sampult is sene of the combracion of a certayn cros . and thys cros is calde a cros floree combratid as apperith here . bot truly spekyng and propurly . it is no cros : bote a shadlyb of such a cros . and the reson is . for the bodi of the said shadlyb is of the same coloure with the felde . And so the colore that is in the felde shewith by all the body of the sayd shadlyb . **C**And thoo that beo thes armys . latine . portant sponam crucem floriam patentem combratam in campo rubro . **C**Gallice sic . Il port de golblez song cros pattee floritee vmbre . **C**Anglice sic . He berith of goldes and a cros patent flore combratyd .



**C**Off a cros flore patent combatid and perfoled.

**D**Ever the less after sum men thys shadwyd cros other wyp; he is peisid maruellys as hit folowith here and than hit is made a cros flore patent combatid and perfoled for hit accordis with the cros preceding exceptid the passing in the myddys of the sayd shado. **C** And then hit shal be sayd that he the the Wiche berith this cros. latine. Portat vna crucem floridam patentem combatam perfolam cum rubio in campo aureo



**C**Et gallice sic Il port dor long croys pattee florilee combate e partie de goblez.

**C**Anglice He berith of golde a cros patent fluzi shadwyd e persyd with gobles,

**B**As letis moost be ware of theis armes combatid of the Wiche: mony rebles be shelbed a fore. Bot for the blasyng of theis certan armes sum ignorant men of thys crafte take the rule goynge a fore that is to wite of the colubris transmutid as ye sole a fore Bot ther be certan nobuls and gentil men in englonde the Wiche bere shadwyds diuerse in thei armes as Lyon Antlop and other. and they that bere thei armes and hit be a Lyon ye shal be in latyn **C**Portat vnum leone combatam in campo aureo **C**Gallice. Il port dor et long leon combatee. **C**Anglice. He berith of golde and a Lyon combatid. **C**And men say that suche personys as bere thei combatid armes had therre pgeritoris berynge the same not combratid bot hole Bot the possessions & the patrimonys descendid to other men. then the Cleuors or Kynrys men leuyng in gode hope and trystyng to haue the possessions of their pgeritoris: bere thei armes combatid. all oder differences a fore said lewys.

for whan they haue that patrimony : that thair trustit con . soon  
they may bee that lion or other beast of the same coloure the whi-  
che theyr progeny to this bate . and it is bettyr to bee thos armis  
combretit then hoolly to lefft theyr progeny to this armis .

**C**Witt here folowis an oðre cros hempt or bordet as aperis

**A**Greit dolste yit remaynys a nendys blaseris of armis i  
dyfferenç be twyng thys cros fimbriat or bordet . as he  
re nold aperis and the forsайд cros combretit .  
in so moch that they ar mych like . andy it apper-  
is in the first sight that they be bot con . bot and  
a man beholde well ther is a greit differens . for  
the bordir of thys cros is variet as well fro the  
coloure of the cros as fro the coloure of the felde .  
and elles is ther no dolste . Therfore it shal be sayde of hym  
that beris theys armis in thys Wyse first in latyn thus .

**P**ortat tonam crucem nigrum perforatam floridam patentem  
fimbriatam sive borduratam cum argento in campo rubro .  
Gallice sic . **C**Il port de gulez song crosis fleuretice palee per  
ce de sault bordure dargent . Anglice sic . **C**He berith gou-  
les with a cros flurri patent pessit of Sable bordetit B . Silu .

**N**olle folowis an Ermyn cros as it shal be shewed

**E**Or certan ther is an Ermyn cros . q hitt  
bis a meruelus cros of y<sup>e</sup> which ther was a di-  
spuracion at london by a certan herald of Gre-  
tan . And it was determinyd that theys armis  
may be in non other coloure bot as here it apperis  
And thys cros is calde an Ermyn cros . and it



shall be sayd of him that beris theys armys in thyse Wyse as it  
shall folow. first in latyn thus. **C**onstat nonam crucem e-  
terminalm. Et gallice sic. **C**il port long croys Eremee  
Anglice sic. **C**he berith a cros ermyn. And here ye moost  
note that the coloure i theys armys shall not be expressit for this  
cros ner theis armis may not be made bot of theys colouris that  
is to say allone of blacke and white the which ar the propur colo-  
ris of theys armys.

**S**ufficientli is spokyn of crossis afore. now folowis an oþer  
tretayns of a yuerse armys quarterly as here shall be shewyd.

**O**ff armys quarterly sum ar armis quarterly playn Sum  
quarterly engradit. Sum quarterly igrasit. Sum qua-  
terly inueckyt. Sum quarterly indentit of the which it shall be  
spokyn euerach oon after other. and first of thair armys playn

**I**t shall be shewyd first of armys quarterly playn.

**T**he maner of Wyse armys may be quartered. The first  
maner is oppn whan. n. dyuerse armys ar borne qua-  
terli as it is oppn and playn in thair armys of the kyng of Fraunce  
or of Englond. And pe shall say of hym  
þ' beris theys armys thus as folowys. first  
i latyn. **I**lle portat arma regis Francie  
Anglie quartaria. Et gallice sic.

**C**il port lez armes de France et dangle  
terre quartees. Anglice sic. **C**he beris  
thair armys of France or Englond quartari.



**A**nd it shal not be dedus to no man that Fraunce is put be  
fore Englonde i blasynge. bot the cause is this. for tharmys of  
Fraunce in armys be put afore and we haue a geniall rule p<sup>e</sup>  
Wherlume u in armys be . n. coloures or moo i the poynct of the shel-  
de. then ye shal not begyn at the poynct to blase them. bot in the  
right pte or side of thos armys. that same coloure ther souncte in the  
right side of p<sup>e</sup> sheldre is not the felde of tharmys. for it mai fortu-  
ne it is not the greetest coloure i tharmys afor sayd bot les or with  
othir equall. and neu the les ye shal begyn to blase ther.

**O**ff armys quartly borne nob<sup>e</sup> it shal be shelyd.

**T**he secunde maner of byse of berynge quarterit armys is  
Bren. mi. diuse armys quartili be borne as here is shewyd  
And he that beris theys armys : beris. mi. diu-  
se armys quartli. latine sic. **I**lle portat qua-  
tuor armas diusa quartiata. Gallice sic.

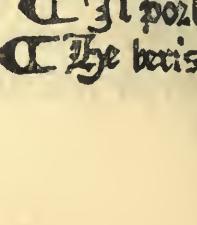


**A**ll port quarter armes diusez quarteleez.  
Anglice sic      **H**e berith. mi. armys diuse  
quartli. And then if it be askyt holsb theys ar-  
mys shulde be blasit. The blaser most begyn i the heyst cornell ou  
the right side procedyng to euy armys. tha mps in the right side  
blasit : ye most go to the odu side & then to the thirde side & aft to  
the last. And ye most knolb that theys armys reher sit afore be  
playn armys quarterit.

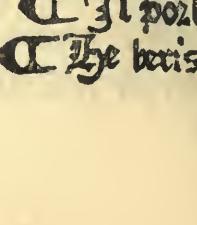
**T**her is an othir maner of berynge of armys quartit When n<sup>e</sup> ar-  
mis quarterit be borne quartli. and it is borne most i armis of  
quengs and so bare that noble quene of Englonde quene Anna  
Byse to that roiall prince Kyng Richard the secunde : the which  
bare tharmys of Englonde & of Fraunce and of thempoz of All  
mayn quartli & m. yro. ptes. that is to say in the right side of

the shelde in the first quarter she bare armys of france . in . flo  
re delucas of golde i a feld of asute . & i the secunde quart . in Li  
bartis of golde i a feld of golbles . & i y<sup>e</sup> thirde quart an Egle  
splayd w<sup>e</sup> . in . neckis . & i the . iiiij . a blake Lyon rampyng i a fel  
de of Silu . and so chaungeably she bare theys armys in . xxvi .  
quarters the which seldyn is seen in any armys .

**O**ff armys quarterit and engraylit now shall be shewyt

**N**ow I shew yow y<sup>e</sup> sum time we haue armys quarterit &  
engraylit . that is to sitt whan euy armys i his quart is  
engraylit as here apperis . & it shall be sayd of him  
y<sup>e</sup> heris theis armys thus . first i latyn  Ille  
portat de auro & rubio arma quarteriata & ingra-  
data . Et gallice sic .  Il port dor et gobblez  
quarterlee engraylee . Anglice sic  The heris  
of golde & gelbles quarteriengraylit . And thei  
are calde armys engradit for they are made of . in . colouris the which  
gradilly ar brought to gedre oon colouris in to an other colouris

**O**ff armys quarterit and irrasyt now I will speke .

**A**erton armys the be quarterit and irrasit  
as here apperis . the which eton armys ar cal-  
led quarterit armys irrasit . for the colouris be ra-  
sit obte as oon colouris i rasynge Ware take albay  
from an oþer . And it shall be sayd of him y<sup>e</sup> he-  
ris theis armys in latyn thus . Portat arma  
quarteriata irrasa de albo & nigro . Gallice sic  Il port  
dargant et Sable quarterlee irrasa . Anglice sic .  The heris  
Siluer and Sable quarteriely irrasyd .

Off armys quarterit inueckyt noll here it shall be shewyd.

**T**her be yet folnde armys quartli inueckyt . or as sum  
men say they be armys quarterit of colo lorbis inueckyt as  
here appertis . the Wiche for soth ar calde armis quarterit inueckyt or  
of colo lorbis inueckyt . for i them ar . iiij . colouris  
quartli pnt : y<sup>e</sup> soon i to the oþer . & so on colo  
re is inueckyt i to an oþer . Therfore it is said of hi  
y<sup>e</sup> beris theis armys i this wise . first i latyn thus  
**I**lle portat quartiam de asurio et auro in ictis  
Et gallice sic . **C**Il port quartli vere dor  
et dor . Anglice sic . **C**He berith quartli inueckyt of asute  
and golde .

¶ off armys quarterit indentet it shall here be shewyd .

**Q**uarterit armys be founde diverse the Wych ar calde inden  
tit as here appertis : and they ar calde indentit for . iiij . co;  
lorbis oon in to an oþer by the man of teþ ar indentit : as is  
oppn i the sheldre . And thus ye shall blasē theym  
first in latyn . **P**ortat arma quartaria identa;  
ta de rubro et duro . Gallice sic . **I**l port  
quarterilee indentee de gobblez et dor . Anglice .  
**C**He berith quartli indentit of gobblez and go  
ðe .

Off armys partit aftir the long Way here shall be shewyd .

**I**ntende noll to detynyn of armys partit after the longe  
Way the Wiche clym partyng aftir the long Way or on length  
is made many man of Wyse . **C**The first pacion for soth is



of .ii. colouris in armis after the long Way in the playne man

- C**ther is also a ptyng of armis of .ii. colouris engradpt.
- C**And also ther is a ptyng of .ii. colordis irrasit.
- C**Also forsoth ther is a partyng of .ii. colordis muechyt.
- C**And ther is an othe partyng of .ii. colordis endentit.
- C**ther is also a ptyng of .ii. colordis clobbit or nbulatit.
- C**And more ouer ther is a ptyng of .ii. colordis Waterp.

**A**yst I shewyd to yoll that ther be certan armis partit  
after the long Way of .ii. colordis in the playn Way as  
here appenis i theys armis. And they ar calde  
ptit armis for they be made of .ii. colouris equal  
li ptit. And he that beris theis armis beris the  
i latyn. Ille portat arma partita plana secun;  
dum longum de asorio et alto. Gallice sic.  
**C**Il port dasor et dargent playn ptee. Angli  
ce sic. He berith a suse and Syluer playn ptit.



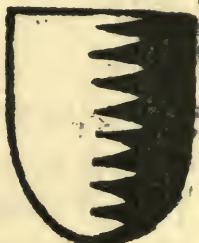
**C**Off armis partit the long Way engralpt I will shew here

**A**lso ther is pacion of armis engralpt the long Way as is  
said a fore bi engraplyng of .ii. colouris to gediz as here  
appenis. And theys armis ar calde armis en;  
gralpt ptit after the long Way of siluer and Sa  
ble. And it shall be sayd of him that berith thes  
armis i latyn thus. Portat arma ptita secun;  
dum longum igradata de argento et nigro. Gal;  
licie sic **C**Il port dargent engraylee et Sable p;  
tee du long. Englice sic He berith Syluer and Sable in;  
graylyt ptit after the long Way.



ere nōb it shall be shelyt of armes partit and iccasit.

**T**he thrid maner of Wyse ar founde armes partit of .iiij. co;  
coloris & iccasit as here of the Wiche it is to be sayd: as  
afore of quartet armes iccasit. And he that  
beris theys armes: beris in this Wyse as folowys  
first in latyn thus. Portat arma p̄tita secundū  
longum iccasa de argento et rubio. Gallice sic.  
**A**Il port p̄tee du long dargent et de gables race  
Anglice sic. **C**He berith armes partit on  
length of Siluer and gobles iccasit.



Off armes p̄tit the long Way and mireckyt nōb Y Bitt speke

**A**lso the fourth maner of Wyse: armes partit as borne af  
ter the longe Way of .iiij. colouris mireckyt as here appetis  
And theys armes be calde mireckyt for the coloris  
us be put oon in to an othir on rounde Wyse.  
And theys armes differ moch fro tharmys next  
being afor iccasit. Wherfore it shall be sayd of  
hem the Wiche beris theys armes thus as it shall  
folow first in latyn thus. Ipse portat arma  
partita secundum longum de coloribus albo et rubio mirectis  
Gallice sic. **A**Il port p̄tee verre du long dargent et de  
gables: Anglice sic. **C**He berith partit mireckyt on lengthe  
of Siluer and gobles.



Off armes partit on the long Bay & indentyt her it is shewyd

**S**otheli an oþer maner of partyt armes ther is the Bi  
che is calde the fyfthe maner partyt after the long Bay  
of .ii. colouris and theys armes ar called partyt  
indentyt. for thys cause that .ii. diuise coloures  
ar put to gether: that is to say white and blac  
ar put to gedre aft the man of menis leche as it  
is sayd afore in the quarterit armes indentyt.  
And therfore ye shall say of hym the Wiche beris  
theys armes in thys Wyse. first in latyn thus. **P**ortat ar  
ma partita secundum longum de argento et nigro indentata.  
**G**allice sic. **I**l port partee endentee du long dargent & sable  
**E**t anglie sic. **C**he beris armes partit indentit on length  
of Syluer and Sable.



Off armes partyt aft the long Bay cloþdy or nebulalyd:

**I**n the sept man of Wyse ther be armes borne partyt aft  
the long Bay nebulalyd as here it shall be shewyd in this  
stochon. And theys armes be calde mnebulalyd  
for .ii. coloures ar put to gedre by the manere of  
cloþdys. Therfore the possessor of theys armes be  
vis in thys Wyse as it shall be sayd first i latyn  
thus. **P**ortat arma partita secundum longum  
de argento et asorio mnebulata. **E**t gallice sic.  
**C**il port partie du long dargent & dasor mnesope:  
**A**nglice sic. **C**he beris armes partyt on length of Sil-  
uer and aure mnebulalyd.



Off armys p̄yt Water of Syluer and gobles his strochon is.

**M**ore ouer ast theys armys aforesyd p̄it ther be borne  
armys partyt after the longe way . and they be Wateri as  
here in this strochon it apperith . and theys armis  
ar calde Wateri : for . ii . coloris ar incaret oon  
in to an other by the maner of Water troublde &  
Bynde . And ye shal say of him that beris theis  
armys in thyss Wyse as folowys : first in latyn .

**A**shortat arma p̄pta vndosa secundum longū  
de argento et rubio . Gallice sic . **C**il port p̄tie du long  
dargent et de goblez vndee . Et anglice sic . **C**he berith  
armys partyt the long Way of Syluer and gobles Wateri :

Nob here I begynne to speke of armys partyt ouerwartz :

**H**ere nob folowys to se of armys p̄yt ouerwartz . the  
whiche certain partition ouerwartz is made as mony Wyse  
as is the p̄tition on length . that is to say on the playn Way  
ouerwartz . ingraplyt . irtasit . muezlyt . indentit . innebula-  
tit . and Wateri Wherfore of theys certayn  
shalt be shelyd by signys . and first I begynne  
at playn armys ouerwartz . as here it shal be sh  
wyd . And it shal be sayd of hym that berithe  
theys armys in thyss Wyse fist in latyn thus .

**A**shortat arma partita extansuso plana de au-  
ro & asoro . Et gallice sic . **C**il port p̄tie transusie dor &  
asoro . Anglice sic . **E**re berith golde and asure p̄tis ouerwartz  
**C**hñalb ye that here is no colote of that first rule : that is  
to say that a man shal be grygyn at the poynct of the shelde to blase  
for here is as mych colouris of golde as of asure .



**C**Off armys irrasit oulbart nob heire it shal be shelbyt.

**N**ob of a nothir maner of partycion of colouris in armis  
oulbarte I will speke. And it is calde irrasit as heire it  
shall appere in this scochion. of the which it is to  
be sayd that the gentylt man the whch beris theys  
armys beris in this maner as folowis. first in  
latyn thus. **C**Portat arma partita ex transuso  
irrasa de auro et rubio. Et gallice sic. **C**I  
port partice transuerse irrasa dor et goldeles.  
Anglice sic. **C**He berith armys partyt ouerbart irrasyt  
of golde and goldeles.



**N**ob of armys partyt oulbart ye shal haue an exemple.

**A**rmys ther be also indentyd oulbart and partyt. And  
they be calde indentyd for theyre coloures as is sayd afore  
as put con in to an othir bi the maner of membre  
tetthe. And it shal be sayd of him that beris  
theys armys in thys wyse first in latyn thus.  
**P**ortat arma partita ex transuso indentata de auro  
et asorio as afore is reherst. Et gallice sic.  
**I**l port partice de trauers dor et dor endenter.

Anglice sic. **C**He berith armys partyt oulbarte indentyt of  
golde and asore



**A**nd to reherse moore of partyt armys oulbarte it nedis not for  
it is rehersty sufficientli in the rules next afore i armys partyt on  
lengthe. Therfore it shal not be rehersty heire agayn. quia  
inutilis est repeticio omnis ad eiusdem. and that is to say

It is an conxfitabull refresyng of oon thyng to reherse the saame  
a gagn in the next sentans. Therfore to speke moore of armes:  
ys partit and figure theym: other of mctaylit or iressit muc  
kyl indentit nebula kyl and condakyl: it nedys not. for they  
be caught sufficently i the long way. **A**nd I beleue it shall  
be hard to fynde mony moo armes ptyt aſt the long way or ou  
wart then ar reherſit a fore. Neu the leſs if any be founde or se  
ne. in theym the ſame rules ſhall be obſeruit: as is reherſit a  
fore. and it is enogh for all armes on that man to be blaſit  
that any gentylt man borith ptyt.

## Off armes the Wiche ar calde cheiff or an heide **I** Wile ſhewē.

**S**Otheli certan men Wolde: p<sup>t</sup> theys armes after reherſitt  
ſhulde be calde armes ptyt. the Wiche certanly 12 z for p<sup>t</sup>:  
that ther is no verti ptytion of the coloures or any likenes of  
dyvifion of coloures. Certanly in armes ptyt it  
is requyrt alway that the ptyes of the coloures  
be equall. and that is not trew in this figure.  
for the moore pte by mych is Siluer. Therfore  
ye ſhall ſay of him that beris theys armes the  
firſt in latyn. **I** portat de argento et caput  
ſuſtide a ſorū cū duabus maculis pforatis de auro. Gallice  
ſic. **I**l port dargent vng cheiff dasor et deup molettis  
ptees dor. Et anglice ſic. **I** He berith Siluer a Cheiff or  
a Chescan of auſtre and ii. molettys pforat of golde.



**C**And ye shall knal that i theys armys the rule aforre bre  
tyn most be considerit that is to say : that at the Coon it is to  
begyn to blase if that coloure of the Coon be garter or more co  
ppous coloure in armys as it is sayd aforre **A**nd more ouer  
it is to be merkyt that no armis albe to be calde ptyt armis bot  
off they be made of . n . colouris onys partit and no more for ar  
mys palit ar not callit : nor albe not to be calde partyt armys  
al thogh they be made of n . colouris for thes coloures not al  
lonke onys bot dyuerse tymys ar partyt as here apperis **A**nd  
theys armys be calde palit armys for they be ma  
de bi the man of palis. **A**nd it shall be sayd of  
hem that beris theys armys i latyn thus. **P**or  
tat arma palata de auro et asorio . Gallice sic .  
**C**Il port pale dor et dasor . Anglice sic .  
**C**He berith pale of golde and asure .



**O**ff armys palit vndatit nob heire it shall be sheldyt .

**D**ylpt armys offyme ar founde vndatyt that is to say  
watteri as here apperis . **A**nd theys be calde polyt ar  
mys vndatyt to the difference of barri armys  
vndatyt . the Wiche armys barrit may also be con  
datyt as after shall be sheldyt . **A**nd it shall be  
sayd of him that beris theys armys thus m latyn  
**P**ortat arma palata vndata vel vndosa de rubio  
et argento . Et gallice sic . **C**Il port palee  
vndee de golblez et dargent . Et anglice sic . **C**He berith  
poly vndatyt of gobles and Siluer .



**C**Off armys palit crokyst and sharpe nold I will speke.

**L**ooke and beholde holl mony maner of Wyse thes palit ar; mys be borne dyuerseli . as it is shewyt in thys boke . and theis armys nold shewyt here : be calde palit crokyst and sharpe . for in theys armys . n . colo; ris paly ar put to gethir : con in to an other cro; kylly and sharpe . Therfore it shall be sayd of hi the which beris thes armis in thys Wyse . first i la; syn thus . **C**hortat arma palata tortuosa acu ta de nigro et argento . Gallice sic . **C**Il port pale d'vnsele de Sable et d'argent . Anglice sic . **C**He berith pale crokyst and sharpe of Sable and Syluez .



Off armys barrut playn nold here it shall be shewyt .

**H**ere i thys chappitre afore is determinyd of palit armis and in thys chappitre nold folowing it shall be deter; minyt of barrut armys . for the which it shall be knold that ar; mys may be mony maner of Wyse barrut . and the first maner of Wyse is playn barrut . as here appers . And ye shall knold that ther be certain armys barrut playn . and then ye shall not ned to say i the blasynge of theys armys : he berith pla yne armys barrut . **N**ot i all oþyr dispertyng ar; mys barrut : ye most nedys declare the blasynge of hym holbe thos barrut armys differ from playn . for sū be barrut **W**t a Lyon raumpyng or a grebonde or oþir beestis & sū be barrut &



pold derit with cros crosletys molettys Scresentis smale briddis  
or other difference bot as for theys playn armis afore ye shal  
say in latyn in thys Byse. Portat arma barrata de argento & ni;  
gro Et gallice sic. **I**l port barre dargent et Sable  
Anglice sic. **H**e berith barri of Siluer and Sable

**O**ff barrat armys vndatit nolb 3 Wytt shels as apperith.

**R**nab ye for cian that armys barrat othic wile ne barrat &  
vndatit that is to say Water. as here it apperith. And  
they be called barrat vndatit for they be made of . ij . colouris me  
tyng to gedre by the maner of a floyng Water as  
it is opyn afore. And ye shalt say of hym that  
beris theis armys i this Byse . first i latyn thus  
**P**ortat arma barrata vndata de nigro et albo  
Gallice sic. **I**l port barri vndee de Sable  
et dargent. Anglice sic. **H**e beris barrat vnd  
atit of Sable and Siluer.



**O**ff armys barrat and mueckyt ye shale haue exemple  
**B**arrat armys mueckyt ar borne of diuerse gentil men.  
Bas here is shelbyd. And thay ar called mueckyt for in  
eueri barre . ij . colouris ar put mueckyt by the ma  
ner of a wounde way as is sayd afore. And he p  
beris this armys beris in thys Byse . first in la  
tyn thus. **P**ortat arma barrata de coloribus  
rubeo et albo muectis . Et gallice sic .



**I**l port barri verree de gobblez et dargent .  
Anglice sic. **H**e berith barri mueckyt of gobbles and Sil  
uer. **A**nd 3 begin with gobbles for that colouris is the  
first in the right cornell.

Off armys barry crokyst and sharpe as here aft is shewit.

**C**entill men ther be certanly the Wiche betwane armis barded crokyst and sharpe as here it apperith in theys armys . and they be called armys barded for difference of armys the same man of Wyse palut : and they be cal- led crokyst and sharpe . for as it is sayd a fore . in coloribus ar put to gethyn crokystli and sharpe . Therefore it shall be sayd that the lorde the Wiche be vns theys armys berith in this Wyse . first i latyn

**I**lle portat arma barrata tortuosa et acuta de nigro et auro . Et gallice sic **C**Il port bardi dauncetee acute de Sable et dor Anglice sic . **C**he berith bardi crokyst and sharpe of Sable and golde .



Doubt it shall be shewyd of armys that ar bendly barryt .

**T**her be forsothe certan armys bendly barded . and theri be cal led bendly barded . and for this cause they be calde bendly barded . for . in . colouribus ar iunynt to gether in eue ry barre bendly . as it is oppyn here i theis armis And therfore it shall be sayd of him that beris theis armys : in this Wyse as folowis . first in latyn thus . **I**pse portat arma bendaria de vino et auro . Et gallice sic . **C**Il port bardi bendee de golblez et dor . Anglice sic . **C**he berith bardi bendy of Golbles and golde .



**C**Bot neuer the lees ye most diligentli attende in the blaſyng  
of sych armys : as palpt barrit and bendyt . for and they ben  
not futilly consaynt a man sodanly onſweryng may lightly in  
thoos armys be diſſaynt . For certanly thoos armys be callede  
palpt armys in the whiche ar folbnde so many palps of oon coloure  
as ar of an other . And iff the palps of bothe the coloures ben  
not equall thoos armys be not palpt .

**C**In diuerſe armys of gentil men be folbnde . iij. palis of oon  
coloure . and . iiij. of an other as here in theis armys folowynge  
it shal be shewed . that is to say ther be . iiij. pa-  
lys of golde and . iiij. of golde for of the coloure  
of rede apperith . iiij. partes in the shelde and bot  
iiij. allone of the coloure of golde Therfore the ge-  
tul man that berith theis armys : beris i this wyse  
e thus ye shalſt ſay of him . firſt in latyn thus .

**P**ortat duos palos aureos in campo rubro . Et gallice sic .

**C**Il port de goldblez et deup pales dor . Et anglice sic .

**E**Re berith goldlys and . iiij. palis of golde .



Here ye ſhalſt diligenty merke armys barrit and lees barrit .

**D**E moſt also diligenty attende to the nombre of both too  
coloures in armys palpt barrit or lees barrit of the whiche  
lyttel barris ye moſt be ware When they be folbnde  
in a mynd . as here it is shewyd in theys armys .  
for sych lynes be callede lyttel barris to the diſſe-  
rance of littell barris . And it ſhalſt be ſayde that  
the gentil man the whiche berith theys armys beris  
in this whiche wyſe firſt in latyn thus as folowis .



**A**portat vnam barram et duas barulas de albo in campo rubio . Et gallice sic . **I**l port de goblez vng barre et deux barrelettes dargent . Et anglice sic . **H**e berith gobles con barre and . ij . litell barris of Syluer .

**D**OUBT Y bytt speke of armys barrid & litell barris florishyt

**B**ehold holde holde the forsayd letell barris ar oþyrsbyle made florishyngli & than ther be calde florishyt as here i thys scochon . And they be calde florishit : for they be made bi y<sup>e</sup> maner of a floore deluce . And ye shal say of hym that is possessor of theys armys i thys boise as folowys . first in latyn thus . **A**portat vnam barram et duas barulas floridas albas in scuto sive campo blodio . Gallice sic . **I**l port dasor vng barree et deux barrelettes florit dargent . **A**n gllice sic . **H**e berith a sure con bar and . ij . litell barris florishyt of Syluer .



**D**OUBT Y intende to speke of bendys in armys as here .

**O**ther byle ther is borne in armys a bende as is founde i divers armys of certan noble gentilmen as here nols itt shal be shewyd . And ye moost knalwe that it is calde a bende the whiche begynnys at the right cor ner or the horne of the sheldre : and descendith to y<sup>e</sup> lefste side of the same sheldre : to the differans of fives or of litell staups of the whiche it shal be spoulyn after . And of hym that has theys armys ye shal say thus as folowys . first in latyn . **A**portat vnam



bendam de rubio in campo aureo . Gallice sic . **I**l port  
dor long bende de golde . Anglice sic . **T**he beth golde e  
a bende of goldes .

**O**ff lites bendys in armys nolb here iss an exemplif.

**E**n al wye holt afor it is sayd that certan littylt barris ar  
az borne i armys mony tymys . On the same maner of wise  
ar borne littylt bendys as here it shal be shewyd . And they be  
talde bendyllys to the differans of grete bendys  
as it is opyn . And of hym that betis theys th<sup>e</sup>  
it shal be sayd . first in latyn as here folowys .  
**P**ortacionam bendam & duas bendulas de auro  
i campo blado . Et gallice sic . **I**l port dasor  
long bendy et deup bendelettis dor . Anglice sic .

**H**e berith ause a bende and . ii . bendils of golde . And thes  
bendyls ar othirwyls floschyt as is shewyd in the figure a fore  
in barris . And in diuse armys they be founde that they be  
chenyt . and sum be polb decrit with molettis . and sum with odir  
dyfferans the wch nedys not to be figurit here

**O**ff armys palit and bendyt nolb here it shal be shewyd

**T**he best maner of wye certainly of berynge of dyse ar  
mys in con shewde is in theys bendys bering for a man  
that has a patrimony left by his fadyz . and o;  
ther certain londys by his modyz cumyng to him  
to the wch londys of his moderis ar appropur  
armys of olde tyme for it may hap that theys  
armys coom to hit by the way and diforn of hit  
progenyturis . then may the wye and hym list



bere shwoost armys of his fady: in y<sup>e</sup> hooft shelder. And i syche  
a bende he may bere his moderis armys as here in the stochon afor  
appells. And it shall be sayd of him that beris theys armys in  
latyn thus. **P**ortat arma palata de argento et rubio cum una  
benda de nigro . Gallice sic . **I**l port palee dargent et de gold  
les et vng bende de sablet . Anglice sic . **E**re berith palee of  
Syluer and gables with a bende of sablet .

**A**nd oþyrs bende i syche a bende ther is fourme . iiiij . moletys  
or magales of golde .

**O**ff armys bende fusillit here now I will examplyst .

**M**ore ou ther be founde in armys other certan bendys to ful  
man strange from theys . and here I Wyll shew to yow a  
bende shew which is calde a bende fusillit : as here ap  
perich in this stochon . And it is calde fusillit for  
it is made all of fusillis of the which certan fusillis  
more shall be spokyn aferward . Bot he shew which  
has theys armys beris in latyn thus . **P**ortat  
conam bendam fusillatum de auro in campo aforo  
Gallice sic . **I**l port dorz vng bendes fusillit dorz .  
Anglice sic . **C**he berith afer a bende fusillit of golde .



**A**nd shys bende many tymys is borne with strangeris and  
specialit in Burgon .

**E**re nold it shal be spokyn of dyuse armeis borduris i armys .

**B**ordures many and dyuse ar founde i armys and ar bois  
One of many nobult men i of the Wiche sum be playn . sum i  
graylit . sum talentis . sum playn polverit . sum chaperit . sum  
gobonettyt . sum inuestryt . of the Wiche it shal be spokyn eynche  
oon after ordiz . And first of playne borduris I will speke as  
here it appertis . And the bordure is calde playne  
Whan it is made playn of con coloore aloon . as  
lyte in thys strochon . And it shal be sayde of hym  
that is possessor of theys armys first in latyn the  
**C** portat tres roses tubias in campo argenteo  
cum vnde bordura de rubro . Et gallice sic .



**C** Il port dargent trois roses de goulez et vng bordure de go  
doles . Et anglice sic **C** He berith Silver . in . roses of gold  
les and a bordure of godoles .

**O**n armys borduris and ingraylit nold here fololys example

**A**rmys with a bordure ingraylit other while ar borne of  
certain nobult men as here nold is shewit in thys strochon .  
And syete a bordure is calde a bordure ingraylit  
for the coloore of hym is put gree by gree in to the  
felde of thamys as it is oppyn here . And the pos  
sessor of theys armys heris i latyn tong thus as  
fololys . **C** portat arma de auro symbrata si  
ue bordurata de nigro ingradata cum tubus macu  
lis perforatis de nigro . Gallice sic . **C** Il port dor trois mul  
lettis perforates de Sable vng borduree ingraylee de Sable .  
Anglice sic . **C** He berith golde . in . molettis perforatis of Sa  
butt and a bordure ingraylit of Sabutt .



## **D**Olls of armys bordurit and talentis 3. Bitt shew example.

**T**her is borne in armys a certan bordure talentis as here.  
**G**and it is not necessari lyre to expres the coloure of the ta;  
lentis or besantis : for thay be euer of golde .

**A**nd it shall be sayd of him that becys thes armis  
in thyse wye first in latyn thus . **C**hortat v;  
num signum capitale de rubio in campo albo bordu  
ratum cum rubio talentatim . Gallice sic .

**I**n port d'argent vng chueron de goldez bordu  
ree de goldez talentee . Et anglie sic . **C**he beith siluer a  
Chueron of goldez bordurit with goldez talentyt .



## **C**Off armys bordurit hauyng . iiij. Chuerons of siluer &c .

**C**Understonde ye that certan lympys a bordure is borne in ar  
mys bordurit dyuerse wyes other wyle with molettis with  
roses or with littylt crossis or with besantis or oþer dyuse . And  
it is calde a bordure polbretit whan any thyng is i  
that bordure : of what sum eu signe it be . as it  
is sayd a fore . and theys signys as roses molettis  
and other ar not countit for certan nombur : for ye  
nombur of that polbretting exceedis the nombur of  
w . And then y<sup>e</sup> bordure is calde polbretit as here .

**A**nd ye shall say that the possessor of theys armys beras in this  
wyse as folowys . first in latyn thus . **C**hortat vnum scu;



tum de cubio cum duobus signis capitalibus & albo et spona bor-  
duca puluis sota cum talentis . Et gallice sic . **I**l port de  
gobles deup Chuerons dargent et song bordure de goldes polis  
dree telente . Anglice sic . **H**e berith goldes . h . Chuerons  
of Siluer and a bordure polis deit with besantis .

**C**vit her is an other maner bordure that is calde Chekeret .

**C**haue yit an other bordure in armys the which is calde a  
bordure chekeret . And it is calde a chekeret bordure  
for hit is made of . ii . coloures by the maner of a Cheker as  
here it appertis . And it shal be sayd of hym the which bras the  
ys armys in this Wyse as folowys . first in la-  
syn thus . Portat sonam crucem tubiam pla-  
nam i campo argenteo cum spona bordura scaccata  
de nigro et argento . Et gallice sic . **I**l port  
dargent song cros plagn de goldes bordure chek-  
ke de Sable et dargent . Et anglice sic .



**H**e berith Siluer con cros plagn of goldes a bordure chekkes  
the which Sabult & Siluer .

Off borduris gobonatit noll herre is an exemplif.

**R**ecorde ye more ou that yit by side theys armys the which  
haue spoke of afore thys borduris : ther is an other bor-  
ture that is calde a bordure gobonatit : as herre it shal be shewyd i  
thys stroekon neyt folowynge . And hit is calde gobonatit for

hit is made of ij. colouris quadrati ioyngt. p<sup>r</sup> is  
to say of blacke & white . & of hym that beris  
theys armes ye shalt say in latyn thus as foloxys  
**C** portat de argento & duas bendes de nigro et  
una bordura de nigro et albo gobonata . Et gal-  
lice sic . **C** Il port dargent deux bendes et long  
bordure de sable et dargent Anglice sic . **C** He bereth siluer  
y bendys of Sable with a bordure gobonatis of Sable & siluer



**C** And thys same bordure bare that nobult prynce the duke  
of Gloucester: brother to that nobult bretiobre kyng henti the  
fifth : the whch roiall duke bare in his armes the bothe armes of  
ffrance and of Englond quartly with a bordure gobonatis of  
Siluer and sable as is shewyt in divers placis . And to blase  
theys armes it nedis not to be reuersit . for it is suffisiently  
taught afore in divers placis .

**C** Item of borduris had in armes of coloris inuectis .

**T**her be yit borduris i armes of ij. colores:  
tris inuectis . as herc in thys figure apperis . and hit is calde a bordure inuectis for hit  
is made of ij. colores to gedyz inuectis . And  
ye shalt say of hym the whch berith theys armes  
in latyn thus . **P**ortat arma quartaria de rubio  
et auro cuim una bordura de argento et nigro simul inuectis .  
Et gallice sic . **C** Il port quartees de goldiez et dor ouest



wong bordure verte dargent et de sable.      Anglice sic  
**C**He beith quarely goldnes and golde With a bordure muelz  
byt of siluer and sable.

**B**Ott i thes borduris ther is a greate differans emoug men  
pretendyng theym apperte and byse in thys sciens as spe-  
cally it is oppyn i thairms in olde tyme of theire of Marche Wlde  
they shulde be calde borduris or not. as herte i thys  
figure. And certan men say y' men not puttynge  
a merueles differans of blasynge say: that the soz  
sayd Earle of marche the Wiche Bos calde Roger  
Mortemer: When that he leuyd bare armys in la-  
syn in thys byse to say **C**Portauit arma pa-  
ta barata et contracionata de asorio & auro cum uno simplici scuto  
de argento. Gallice sic. **C**Il port pale barree girone dasor-  
do: et wong escu simple dargent. Anglice sic. **C**He beith pa-  
ly bari contrati conyl of asure & golde With a siple sheldre of silu.



**C**And this oppynyon aforerehersit in the blasynge plesyd ma-  
ny a man the whiche in no man of Whise may be tolde. For if thes  
airms as it is sayd aforerehersit contrati conatit. then the laboyst  
corner or the coone of thairms that is to say the laboyst point of  
the sheldre may neu be of con colorde as certanly it is of asure.

**O**ver thys thynngs aforerehersit in thes armis it is clon  
that in all armis contrari conyl all the conys of whiche sum en-  
lode thairms be made they mete to gedry: tonally in the middis  
of the sheldre. as in the nexte figure of the sheldre oppynly it shalld

be shewyd. Wherfore as it apperith to my reson iulier they shal  
be blasit on this byse: exceptit the gretter autorite that the for-  
sayd Eile of Marche beith thus in latyn. **P**ortauit arma  
barata et caput hysti palatum & angulatum de auro & auro cum  
quodam scuto simplici de argento. Et gallice sic. **I**l port  
barre et vng Chieff pale cinciate dorz & dor et vng eku simple  
dargent. Et anglie sic. **C**he beith barri and a Cheff pa-  
le angulatil of auro and golde with a symple sheld of Silu.

**O**ff armes contrari conyf here I will informe you.

**T**her be yit for sooth diuerse noble men the whiche bore armes  
contrari conyf. as her in thys bochon apperith. And  
theys armes be calde contrari conyf for this cause.  
for all the colouris of theys armes meeke to gedre  
at on coone. that is to say at the myddyl poynt  
of the shelde only. Ifor euy body triangulit is  
moore of lengthe then of brede and naamly conyf  
not p3. Therfore the oppynyon of thos men the whiche  
the sayd that the armes afoore rehersit: that is to witte of ther  
les armes of Marche War polyt barri and contrari conyf is to  
be reþreyf. for so mych that the conyf of the forsayd armes



accorde not the Wiche of necessite shulde accorde iff the forsayd oþy  
nyon her tible. And of hym that beris theys armys ye shalſt  
ſay in latyn. **P**ortat arma contrasonata de blodio et albo  
Et gallice ſic. **I**l port girone daſor et daſgent. Anglice ſic.  
**H**e berith contrari conȝt of aſure and ſiluer.

**O**ff pilis armys nolle here it ſhall be ſheloþt:

**E**or as mych as it is ſpotyn aſore of armys: in the Wiche  
the coloratis mete to gedoyz in the myddiſt poyn̄t wonky.   
Nolle ſoloþyth of certain armys in the Wiche iij. pi-  
les mete to gedoyz in con coone. as here in thys fi-  
gure. And it ſhall be ſayde of hym the Wiche be-  
ris theys armys in latyn in thys Boþe.  
**C**portat tres pilas migras in campo aureo.  
Gallice ſic. **I**l port do: trois piles de fable.  
Et anglice ſic. **C**He berith golde. iij. pilis of fable

**C**Off ballis in armys here nolle it ſhall be ſheloþt.

**D**euſ the leſ ye moſt conſpoþt a diſſeruſ i theys blaſyn  
oþys of theys armys aſore: and theys that cum after  
to be the blaſe theym in latyn tong. for other while thys teſte  
pila i latyn is take for to be a peſe of tymbre to be put vnder the  
pelor of a bryge: or to ſycke a like Werke as i they empull aſor  
And oþy: while this teſte pila is take for a certain rounde iſtu-  
met to play the: the Wiche iſtrument Fups other while to the hande

and then it is calde i latyn pila manualis as here  
And oþer while it is an instrument for the foote  
and then it is calde in latyn pila pedalis a fote bal  
þerfor it shal be sayd of hym that beris thes ar-  
mys m latyn **H**ortat tres pilas argenteas  
m campo rubio . Et gallice sic . **C**Il port de  
gobles trois pelettis dargent . Et anglice sic . **C**He berith  
gobles in ballis of Siluer .



**O**þtanli ye most merke that i this figure of ballis a man  
may soon er . Before shortly it is to be knaw þat such  
ballis may haue all coloris bot the coloris of golde for þat  
þe of goldyn colouris : they shulde be calde talentis or besantis the  
whiche be eu of golden coloris .

### Off tortellys or litill Takys in armys .

**T**her be also tortellis þt be litill Takys  
þt whiche be greetir then ballys & þt armys  
be truly made as here it is opyn . And þt þt be  
ris thes armys beris in this wyse first i latyn .

**H**ortat tres tortellas rubias i campo aureo .  
Gallice sic . **C**Il port dor et trois torteulx de  
gobles . Et anglice sic . **C**He berith golde & in . Takys of  
gobles .

**T**ore ouer merke : that as wele ballys in armys as kakis  
and besantis all way at hoolt wylnde figuris & not pforat



### Off fontans or Bellis here Y wylt speke .

**N**euer the les ther be cian nobult men the whiche bee sicky wounde fi-  
guris : the whiche figuris ar calde fontanys or Bellis as here ap-

partis. the Wiche fontans eumore most be of Whyle  
colorure for the thyng the Wiche they represent.  
For they represent eumore the colorure of the wa-  
ter of a Well the Wiche is White. And of hym y<sup>e</sup>  
beris thes armys ye most say in latyn thus.



Portat tres fontes i campo aureo. Gallice sic

**I**l port dor et trois fonteyns. Anglice sic. **C**He berith  
of golde and .iiij. Wellis.

Off ryngys the Wiche be other wounde instrumentis **T**hitt speke

**A**fter z theis wonden figuris a force rehersyt  
ther be cian figuris the Wiche be pforatit as  
be ryngys: as here apperis. And it shall be sayd  
of hym that beris theis armys i latyn th9. Per-  
tat tres anulos aureos i campo nigro. Gallice  
sic **I**l port de sable et trois anulettis dor. An-  
glice sic. **H**e berith Sabatt and .iiij. ryngys of golde.

**C**Off tractys in armys.

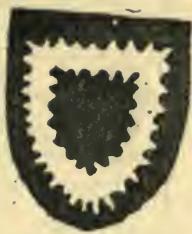
**A**fore it is sayd of borduris i armys. now it folowith to  
se of tractis or lyngys. and first of a symple tract. and  
they be calde tractis for as mych as the felde remay-  
nyng of tharmys as Wele Wiche i as Wiche olde. &  
an other lyne is dralbyn of an other colorure as  
here: to the man of a shelde. And it shall be saydy  
of hym that beris thes armys i latyn. **P**ortat  
mnu tractu siplinem planam aureu i campo asoreo  
Gallice sic. **I**l port dorong trace playn dor. Anglice sic  
**H**e berith ause a playn tract of golde.



Off a tract ingraylyt con bothe the sydys here is an exemple.

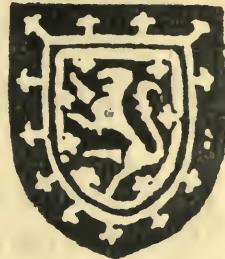
**A** tract or a lyne oþer while is ingraylyt on bothe the þy-  
ges as here in thygs figure appetith. And then it shall

be sayd of hym that beris theys armes i thys by  
se first in latyn thus. **C**hortat sonum tractu  
ex potaque parte igitur de auro i campo rubio  
Et gallice sic. **C**Il port de goblez song trace  
ingraple de chestim coste dor. Anglice sic.  
**H**e berith gobles dor a tract ingraple on bo  
bly the fides of golde.



**O**ff a tract dobbult and florishyt it shall be shelyt.

**T**hus tract is other byle dobbult as in charmys of the  
Kyng of Scottelonde. as here in this cochon apperis. &  
the forsayd Kyng of Scottelond beris i thys by  
se first in latyn thus. Portat duplum trac  
tum cum floribus gladioli contrapositis et uno  
leone capaci de rubio in campo aureo. Et galli  
ce sic. Il port dor song dobble trace florete  
countree et song leon rampant de goblez. An  
glice sic. **C**He berith golde a dobble trace florishyt contrari  
and a Lyon rampyng of gobles.



Off tractis triplatis and quatriplatis oþþyþþyle.

**A**llso of theys armes afore telersit I fynde more dypersite  
for ther be certain nobull men the whiche beret theys tractis  
triplatit as here in thys sygure. and sum beret hit  
quatriplatis as is founde i druse armis. And ye  
shall say of him that beris theys armes triplatis  
i latyn thus. **C**hortat tractum triplicatum de al  
bo i campo aureo. Gallice sic. Il port dor song  
trace triple dargent. Anglice sic. **C**He be  
rich golde a trace triplatis of Siluer.



Off a tract symfull of .ij. coloribus and inueckyt an exemple

**T**her be other nobyll men the which have a simpult tract of .ii.  
coloribus inueckyt as here now it shall be shewyt in thys  
strochon . And the posseffor of theys armes heris  
in this Wyse as folowis first in latyn . **P**ortat  
eorum tractum simplicem de coloribus auro a;  
genteo inuectis in scuto aureo . Et gallice sic .  
**C**il port dor long trace simple verre dasor et  
dargent . Anglice sic . **C**he brith gold and  
a tract symple inueckyt of auro and Siluer .



After tractis now it shall be spokyn of fyssuris or stauys .

**A**fore theys fyssuris it is spokyn of bendys : and their dif-  
ferans . Now it shall be spokyn of fyssuris . the wych c-  
tan fyssuris or stauys begynne in the lefte horne of the shelde : &  
az draulne to the right parte of the shelde beneath to the differan-  
ce of bendys the wych begynne in the right horne of the shelde &  
az draulne to the lefte side of the shelde beneath . and thys way  
most the fyssure be draulne as here apperis i thys  
fygure . And ye shall condistonde that theis fis-  
sures differ as mony ways as the forsayd bendys  
dyfferyt . bot it nedys not to be rehersyd for it is  
playn shewyt aforre . Ther be fyssuris or stauys  
playn . mgradyt . inueckyt . and fusyllatit . as  
I sayd aforre in the place of bendys . And theys stauys basta-  
dys az wont to bete or namly they shulde bete thaym . And  
then thys fyssure is calld a stasse : & i french it is calld a baston



**B**ot commynli it is calde a fissure for as mych that he cleuys his faderis armys in ij partes for that bastard is clouyn and deuyd from the paltimony of his fader. And so sych a bastard is forbedyn to bere the hooft armys of his fader for the reuerence of his blode. bot his faderis armys he may bere with sych a staffe as is sayd afore: in signe and finall declaracion of his bas tardy and to the difference of proper and naturall hayre of his fader. And whan ye haue any sych a playn fissure or a staffe i armys or ingraplit inueckyt or fusillatit: of that same staffe ye shal say as a fore is refresit in the chapiture of brydes moore playnli. And the bastarde the which berith theys armys possesstis in latyn on thys maner as nold lyte folowys.

**P**ortat sonam fissuram sive baculum aureum i campo a sorio.  
Gallice sic. Il port dasor et long fees dor. Anglice sic.  
**C**He berith a stafe and a fissure or a staffe of golde.

**N**oble here I begynne to speke of armys hered as it appertis.

**H**er be certain nobell men the which bere armis heredit as here it apperteth. And ye most knal that theis armys be calle led heredt: Whan the hyer parte of the shelde that is to say the heredt is made of een coloure or of moo then of een: & that parte extendys not to the myddis of the shelde as aboven is shewyd by the shelde. And knilbe ye that in the heredit armys is a good man of beryng of dyuse armys as by fortune ful noble man has mony londis and greete lordshypys by his modir for the which londys of his moderis he intendys to bere the armys of his modir. and so he may do for it is rightwys.



**B**ot he that descendys of a nobult fadyz or of a gentill man .  
by the wych he had any simple patrimony . then sych a nobult  
man : and he wylt : may bese the hoolt armys of his moodyz in  
the labyr parte of his shelds . and in sych an hyde as I sayd  
a fore he may and he wylt bese the hoolt armys of his fadyz  
**A**nd it shall be sayd of hym that beris theys armys i thys by  
se first in latyn thus . **C**hortal sonum signum capitale de ni  
gro m campo aureo cum uno capite rubio et tribus talentis i eo  
dem . Et gallice sic . **I**l port dor vng cheueron de Sabult  
et vng Cheff de goblez et trois besantis en la mesme .  
Anglice sic . **C**he berith golde a cheueron of Sabult &  
a Cheff of gobles and . iij . besantis ther in .

**C**And ther be certan nobult psones the whiche ber in the shel  
de aforer wch sit of golde as is sayd a fore a Cheueron of Sa  
butz or of sum odyz colordre and . iij . rede wosis or Whylte or sum  
other sygnys as crossis cresstantis briddys or florbris and a che  
eff sum of Sabult sum of other colordre with the signe of mole  
tis or oder tokynyngh the whiche need not to be wch sit . And then  
shall euerich oon of theym be blasit in his nombur like as the  
felde and the signes require : as by fortune sum men bese thus  
to say . He berith Sabult a Cheueron of golde . iij . rede wsys  
of gobles a Cheff of asure Wth . iij . moleys perforatis of vert  
and thus of all other differansys .

**O**ff armys palit with oon quarter of an other coloure .

**C**ertainly ther be sum nobult men the wych bese in ther ar  
mys con quarter of an other colordre dyfferyng from the

coloure or the coloures of the shelde as heire . in the  
 Wiche armis it is to be sayd that the nobull man the  
 Wiche beris theym berith in this Wyse first in latyn .  
**P**ortat arma palata de a serio et auro cum una  
 quarteria ex mettata . Et gallice sic . **I**n port  
 palee dasor et dor vng quart dermyn . Et anglice  
 sic . **E**re berith paly dasor and golde with con quare of Ermyn .



**C**And it is to be notit that ye most haue a respeblent to the co  
 louris of that pale the Wiche shulde ascendre to the right horne of the  
 shelde iff that quarter were not ther . and i that coloure ye most  
 eu moore begyn to blase thoos armys like as the quart were not  
 ther as afor is rehersit .

**N**ole of armys chekeret here ye shafft haue an exemple .

**D**ee ouer other Whiche we se armys chekeret as heire noll  
 dit apperith in thys figure folowyng and they be calde ar-  
 myes chekeret whan they ar made of . ij . colouris to  
 the maner of a cheker . And theys armys say  
 ue many differens as in hexys or quarteris i bar  
 ris and bendis and other blydes i cheuerons of ye  
 Wiche it shall be spokyn a noon folowyng . And of  
 hym the Wiche possessis theys armys ye shafft say in  
 latyn thus . **P**ortat arma kakkata de a serio et auro . Et  
 gallice sic . **I**n port scakke dasor et dor . Anglice sic .  
**C**He berith chekeres of a sute and golde



## Off Chenerons the Which i englysh ar calde colpuls of sparris

**M**E have sotheli in armes certan signys the Which ar calde  
Chuerons in french . And they be calde in latyn Signa  
capitalia vel tigna . and in englysh a colpult of sparris as here  
is shewyd i theys signes : the Which signes by lik  
lenes first War borne of carpentaries and make  
ris of holoses . for an holose is neu made p fite tyll  
thous sparris be put apon hit : by the maner of an  
hexe . and .iiij. syche sparris or chuerons ionyp to  
gedyrs make a capitall sygne . y<sup>e</sup> is to say a cold  
pult of sparris . and other While . iiij. syche be borne i armes and  
othyr While . in . odyz While . iiiij . as it is knalwyn . And of him  
that beris theys armes afore ye shall say thus as folowys first  
i latyn . **C**horetat de rubio et duo signa capitalia de auro c*n*  
tribus talentis . Et gallice sic . **C**Il port de golbz et deup  
Chuerons dor et trois talente . Anglice sic . **C**He berith  
goshles and .iiij. Chuerons of golde While iij besontis .



## Off a Chueron or a sygne capitall engraylyt here is shewyt .

**A**lso a Chueron is oþir While engraylyt as here and then  
it is to be sayd of hym the Which beris theys armes in la  
tny m thys lyse . **C**horetat vnum signum cap  
tale in gradatum de albo in campo a foreo . Et gal  
lice sic . **C**Il port daso i vng Chueron dargent  
engraylee . Anglice sic . **C**He berith a fore  
and a Chueron of Syluez engraylyt .



## Off dyuerse and meruelous Cheuerons yit I wile speke .

**O**ne ouer yit i theys signys of Cheuerons other while is folvnde a dolte in the blasynge of theym . When thei be made of dyuerse coloribus transmutat as here in this scochon apperith . And of hym the Wych beris thes armys ye shall say in latyn . **C**horetat arma quartaria de nigro & argento cum uno signo capitulo de dictis coloribus transmutatis . Gallice sic . **I**l port quarterilee de sable & argente & vng Cheueron chaynge lung de laultre . Anglice sic . **C**he be with quarterly Sable and Siluer With a Cheueron of the sayd coloribus transmutat .



## Off Cheueuons differyng on the longe Way :

**A**lso theys signes or Cheuerons be differt after the longe Way in armys as here in this figure apperith . And then of hym the Wych beris theys armys ye shall say in latyn . **C**horetat arma partita secundum legum de coloribus aureo & rubeo cum uno signo capitoli de dictis coloribus transmutatis . Gallice sic .

**I**l port partie du long de dor & golde & vng cheueron chaynge lung de laultre . Anglice sic .

**C**he berith party ast the longe Way of . ii colouris golde and goules With a Cheueron of the sayd coloribus transmutat .

## Off doltes emong herwodis i blasynge theys armys syng

**E**mong oþys doltes : a dolte the blasynge of tharmis here folowing nold next I haue heide herwodys pretendyng



theym selfe veri conyng in blasynge of armys mer  
uelusli to dreeme in the blasynge of theys armys .  
And sum holde oon oppynpon and sum an oþyr .  
neuer the les it is no grete neede to dolote in the  
blasynge of theym as to conyng men . Therfore  
of hym y<sup>e</sup> teris thes armys ye shalt say i latyn .



**P**ortat duas ptes capitis scutis de rubio et tunciam ptem de albo ad  
modum signi capitalis et tres roses de coloribus transmutatis .  
Et gallice sic . **C**Il port lez deup ptes du chief de goldolez et le  
troisune dargent ptez en manere du cheueron et trois roses lung  
de laulice . Anglice sic . **H**e berith . in partis of the heide of the  
shelde goldoles and the chide pte Siluer by the maner of a che  
ueron and . in . roses of the same coloribus transmutat .

**O**ff armys fusellis in englyssh fayndyllis now I will speke .

**T**her be certan gentylmen and nobules the Wiche beere in theyr  
armys fusellis : of the nombur of the Wiche : my lorde of  
Gloucester y<sup>e</sup> nobull prince oncle to kyng henri the sept was .  
For he had in his armys . in . fusellis of goldoles by the maner of a  
bar in a felde of siluer the Wiche etan armys this  
nobull duke bare by the reson of certan londis he  
longyng to the mounte . Bot ye shalt say of hym  
that teris theys armys i this stochon in latyn th<sup>e</sup>



**C**portat de rubio et tres fusulos de argento .

Et gallice sic . **I**l port de goldolez et trois fusulez  
dargent . Anglice sic . **C**He berith goldoles and . in . fusules  
of Siluer . And otherwylle theys . in . fusules or . in . be borne  
by the maner of a partie .

**I**t is to be notit that when. in fusiles or. ij. ar borne ar mao to  
the nombur of . ix. the which nombur if thei excede : say euermore  
that thos armys be poldeirit with fusillis or other thyngys and  
noon oþre wye . **C**And so generalli ye most knalb that iff  
any thyng be borne in armys ouer the nombur of . ix. then thoos  
armys what sum euer they be they ar poldeirit .

**O**ff oon fusyll borne in armys here I wile exampult .

**O**ther while con fusyll is borne allon in armys as here i  
thyg figure it apperith . in whiche mate . I haue head certan  
herwodis dolde in theyg oppynponys . Neu the lees  
it is cian that ye shalt soy of hym the which beris  
theyg armys with dolde double i latyn thus as so;  
lollis . **P**ortat de cubio cum uno fusulo de auro  
Et gallice sic . **I**l port de goldlez song fusill or  
Anglice sic . **C**He berith gables and a fusill  
of golde .



**O**ff an fusyll of dyuerse coloures nowt here I wile speche .

**A**lso theyg fusyllis sum tyme ar borne of dyuerse coloures  
As beþ in thyg figure it is shewyd . Bot it is a moore  
dolde holde theyg armys shulde be blasit then than;  
mys afore . bot ye shalt soy i latyn of hym the whi  
che has thes armys in this wye . **P**ortat arma  
pazata ex transuerso de albo et nigro cum uno fusa  
lo ex aisdem coloribus transmutatis . Et gallice  
sic . **I**l port partie de trauers dargent et sable et  
ping fusyll de mesmes colourz lung de laultre . Et anglice sic



**H**e berith armys partit ouerwark of Siluer & sable with a  
fisylt of the saame coloribus transmutat.

**O**ff fusyllis by the maner of a bende here I will shewte say.

**N**ote ouer syd fusyllis ar borne in armys by the maner  
of a bende . as here nolb apperith And then ye shall say  
of hym the which pcessis theys armys in this Wyse  
firſt in latyn thus . **C**horat ponam bendam  
fusillatam de auro in campo rubro . Et gallice sic  
**I**l port de gobblez vng bende fusylt dor . Et  
anglice sic . **C**he berith gobblez and a bende  
fusyllit of golde .



**C**Off a bar fusyllit in armys here is an exemple .

**A**lso ther be borne in armys theys fusyllys in a bar fusyllit  
as here it apperith . And then it is to be sayd of hym the  
which hath theys armys in latyn thus . **C**hor:  
tat de rubio cum vna barte fusillata de argento .  
Gallice sic . **I**l port de gobblez vng barte fu:  
sulee dargent . Et anglice sic . **C**he berith  
gobblez and a bar fusyllit of Siluer . And sum  
men say that the forsайд armys began of Beueris  
for as mych as Beueris rose sich fusillys made of sponnyn wolt



**K**nalle ye y<sup>e</sup> differans bi twip fusillis Masculis & Losyng

**D**oþ here ye shall knalb the differans be twip fusilli mas  
culys and losyngys . Wherfore it is to be knaldo that

fusyllis ar euer more long also fusyllis ar strattys euer shortt in  
the baly then ar M ascules . And M ascules ar larger ouer Bartt  
in the baly : and shorter in length then be fusyllis . as here i this  
scochon it apperith . And it shall be sayd of hym  
that possessis theys armys in this Wyse . first i la  
tyn . **P**ortat de rubio e sep masculas de auro .  
Et gallice sic . **I**l port de goldes et . vi . mascu  
les dor : Et gallice sic . **C**he berith gobbles  
and sep masculles of golde .



And theys masculles other While ar pforatis as I sayd of ore  
in the chapiture of the cros masculatit .

Off an oþrys maner of masculles yit here I will speke .

**A**lso other While ar borne armys masculatit as here now  
Am this figure folowyng is shewyn . And ye shall con  
derstande that thos armys be calde masculatit in  
the whiche forsayd masculles begyn most plentys  
ly in the right angle of the shelde . and ar endid  
to warde the leste pte . the whiche certan armys in up  
ded ar palis . e ar deuydit i to . iiiij . polys of ther be  
subtile consayunt . And of hym that beris theys  
armys it shall be sayd i this Wyse first in latyn . **P**ortat ar  
ma masculata de argento e aso rivo . Et gallice sic . **I**t port  
argent et dor masculae . Et anglie sic . **C**he berith  
of Siluer and asure masculatit .



## Off losyngys hōlō and what maner of Wyse they be made.

**A**ll so losyngye no maner of Wyse be made bot lārmgs ben dit . nei they may not be made by the selfe . and they be made all way as thrys be made bendit . And ye shall haue the moost percey differans by thisp the forsayd masculatit armgs and bendid in the picturis of the forsayd armgs . And ye most take thys for a generall enformacion and instrucccion thatt certainli losyng eūmore stande wptight : that is to say that the hyt poynt or the heght : eu ascendis to hauen or to a māmpe bed . so that the hyt poynt extendys vertually to the bed of the shelde . and of the ouerwart corneris oon extendis vertually to the right side . and that other corner extendys to the lef te side of the shelde . and the latwist parte extendys to the latwist parte of the shelde dyametralit as it is oppyn in the shelde next a sore . And so witht oþer doþte we haue the differans of the forsayd signes . that is to bete of Māscules and Losynges . Nota also the forsayd fusyllis never be founde pforatit ner losyngys afore sayd be neu pforatit .



**N**ōlō of a signe i armis y<sup>e</sup> is calde a Saltori a man of a cros

**T**her is an other maner of signe in armis : by dyuse nobutt men borne : the Wiche is calde a Saltori . and it is made by the man of a cros of Saynt andreua as here nōlō it apperith . And thys cros is lic kpton after certan men to an instrument made in dyuerse partys the Wiche is of a greate magnytude or largenes : to the comparisyon of thys signe . And it is well knoll of nobutt gentelmen and



huntreris that sych saltatories ar ordint in mony parbys & pla  
as to take wylde bestys the wiche onys their enteryng : by thatt  
instrumente may new goo a gayn . Therfore in olde tyme thes  
signys were geuen to wch men . and otherlyse calde auoiris  
Mygonyss or keperis the wiche men suffiz not therir tresures i what  
maner of bysse they be getyn : to passe from theym . And of  
hem the wiche possessis theys armys ye shall say in latyn . Por  
tat de auctor et conum saltatorium de auto . Et gallice sic .  
**I** l port dasor vng faultier dor . Et anglice sic . **C** he  
berith a sure and a Saltory or a saltire of golde .

Off armys saltarie engradis here 3 wile exemplifi.

**H**old here ye most knalb that theys armys Saltorie o:  
ther wile engradit as here in theys figure nolb appetith  
And they be all de saltarie engradit as it is  
sayd aforo in mony placis . as of the cros ingradit  
of barris and bendys . And of hem that betis  
theys armys ye shall say in latyn . Porat o:  
num saltatorium ingradatum de auto in campo a:  
sorio . Et gallice sic . **I** l port dasor vng faultier dor  
engrapler . Et anglice sic . **C** he berith a sure and  
a cros saltarie of golde engradit .



Off many crossis saltarie borne in armys ingradit an example

**O**ther wile ther be borne mony crossis saltarie i armys en:  
gradit in een sheldre . other wile . n . other wile . n . as

here. And of hym that beris theys armys thus  
it shall be sayd in latyn. **P**ortat unam bar-  
ram planam et tria saltatoria ingradita de auro i  
campo rubro. Et gallice sic. **I**l port de golde;  
lez song barre playn et trois saultiers engravez dor.  
Et anglice sic. **H**e berith godes oon bar playn  
and ij. saltire crossis engravdyt of golde.



### Off Crollynys m armys borne by the maner of a pale.

**I**t is diligensli to be markyt that when we say such a lor-  
de berith. in sych sygnys. Holo theys. ij. signes ar bor-  
ne in armys we say not all way. For other while theys. ij.  
signys ar put in a shelde by the maner of a pale. And then ther  
be calde signes palit. as here i thys figure it ap-  
perith. And of hym that has theys armys ye  
shall say in latyn. **P**ortat ij. coronas de auro  
palatas in campo asorio. Et gallice sic. **I**l  
port dasor et trois corones dor paleez. Anglice sic.  
**H**e berith asute and ij. crowns of golde palit.



### Off crollynys m armys borne barrit here. I will informe yow

**H**olo theys. ij. signes other white be bor-  
ne barrit here nols appearith in thys figure.  
And then of hym that beris theys armys ye shall  
say in latyn. **P**ortat tres coronas aureas i  
campo asorio. Et gallice sic. **I**l port dasor  
et et trois corones barrez dor. Et anglice sic.  
**C**He berith asute & ij. crowns of golde barritt.



## Off. iiiij. Cronges borne in the corneris of the shelde.

**A**certainly theys: iiii cronges be borne i the most comyn Way  
in the corneris of the shelde as here in thys stockon it ap  
perith. And then ye most thus say that thes. ij signes be borne in the corneris of the shelde. for  
that is the most commune & the moost famoust maner  
of beryng of thes. ij signes or ani maner signes  
The force ye shall say that syd a lord berith i la  
tyn in thys wise as here folowys. **C**hortal  
de asoio et tres coronas aureas. non expremendo loca. Et  
gallice sic. **T**Il port desor et trois corones dor. Et anglie  
sic. **C**He berith a sure and. ij crobbys of golde.



## Off fisches borne in armys in dyuse Wyse here is a dectrine

**A**newe dolte yit is founde in armys. for as mych as ther  
was a certan man that heght Petrus de cupibus m tyme  
passit the bishop of Wyntchester: the which baar i his armys iiii  
(Rochys after hys alone naam) in which armys it is dolte.  
Wherther it is enogh to say in the blasynge of them: that he bare  
syd iiii fisches allone. as here in thys stockon.  
And certanly I thynke ney. for the rule goyng  
a force. Bot it is thus to be sayd: of the sayd  
Petrus m latyn. **C**hortant tres huiusmodi  
pisces argenteos natantes in campo nigro. Et  
gallice sic. **T**Il port de Sable et trois Ro  
ches nargentz dargent. Et anglie sic. **C**He berith Sable  
and iiii Roches snymungng of Siluer.



**A**nd then to armes of Galfide Lucy as  
here noulx apperis i this figure And ye most say y<sup>e</sup>  
he bare thus in latyn . **G**oportavit tres lucos  
aureos in campo rubeo . Et gallic sic . **I**l  
port de gouldz et trois lucez dor . Anglice sic .



**A**He berith gouldes and ij lucee of golde .  
the which certan blaspong with olde declaracion here is enogh .  
for the sayd fishes ar in thare proper placis as I sayd in the  
rule afore .

**G**ot what shal be sayd of thys man then : the  
which beris . ij . barbellis turnyng theyr backs to  
geder as here apperis . Ne most say in latyn th<sup>e</sup>  
**G**oportat duos barbillos aureos adiuicem i  
ga vertentes in scuto asorio pinduerisato cū cruci  
bus cruciatis figitiis de auro . Et gallice sic .



**I**l port dasor pou dre dez croys crocelez fichez et deuy bar  
bulb dors an dors dor . Et anglice sic . **A**He berith a sure  
poloderit with crossis crofletys pycche and . ij . barbellis of golde  
backe to backe .

**O**ff armes the which ar calde frectis here noulx I wylt speke .

**A**Certan nobult baron that is to say the lord albedley of  
the Reame of Englonde bear in his armes a frecke .  
the which certan frectis i mony armes of dyuerse gentil men ar  
founde . other whyle reedre other whyle golde . and other whyle  
blac oderwhyle simple and oderwhyle double otherwhyle tripult

and other whyle it is multipliet ou all the sheld  
as here it apperith . and ye most condiscandeon  
gret differans by swip armys bendit and theis  
armys the whiche be made with the forsayd frettys  
Wherfore it is to be markyt that in bendyt armys  
the colouris contynyt equally ar dyuidit . Bot i  
thes frettis the feld ar wai abydys wolt as here . and this for  
sayd lorde audely berie thus in latyn . **C**hortat arma stec  
tata de auro in campo rubro . Et gallice sic . **I**l por de gold  
lez song frecte dor . Anglice sic . **C**He berith gobles and  
a frecte of golde .



### Off armys hauyng beestis salyentynge or rampyng.

**B**eestis in thayns of dyuerse nobult ar borne rampyng  
as here i thys figure folowyng apperith . of the whiche i the  
wole afore I haue made no mencion . And of  
hem that is possessor of theys armys ye shalfe  
say i latyn . **C**hortat de rubro et onum leo;  
nem de argento . Et gallice sic . **I**l por  
de gobles song Leon saliantz dargent . Et an;  
glice sic . **C**He berith gobles et a lion ram;  
pyng of siluer . And he is calde a Lion rampyng for thys cau;  
se . for as mych as the right foote ascendyth to the right horne  
of the sheld . and the lefte foote descendyth in to the foote of the  
sheld as apperith i the figure . And this same man is obseruyt  
in all beestis hauyng .iii . feete . that is to say in leonis leopar;  
dis beestis doggis with other like to them .



**D**oubtless of all the signys whiche ar founde i armys  
as of florris leups and other meruellys tokenys I can  
not declare here : ther be so mony . Bot ye shal knwo general  
ly that for all thair myns the Whiche lyghtly any man has seen i his  
days : ye haue rules sufficient as I de leue . to dyscernne and bla  
se any of theym : and it be so that ye be not in yowre mynde to  
basty or to shyppe in the dyscernyng . Ne ye may not ouerrun  
sloppily the forsayd rules . bot diligenty haue theym in yowre  
mynde . and be not to full of consaitis . For he that will hunt  
in batys i oon obre : or oon while con . an other while an other  
lightly be losys both . Therfore take heed to the rules . If so be  
that they be not a generall doctrine : yet shal thair prosecute for  
thys sciens greatly .

**M**erke ye well theys questionys here nolb folowing .

**B**ot nolb to a question I will procede . and that is thys  
Whethyrz thair myns of the greateynge of a pryncipe or of o  
ther wryds as better or of sych dignyte : as armys of a manis  
proper auctorite take . When that it is lefull to euery nobult  
man to take to hym armys at his plesure . For the Whiche questi  
on it is to be knaw that . iii . maner of Wyse we haue armys

**T**he first maner of Wyse we haue obre alene armis the Whi  
che we bee of obre fadys or of obre moodys or of obre predys  
cessoris . the Wyche maner of beinge is commune and famus in  
the Wyche I will not stonde long . for that maner is best puyt

**C**he secunde maner we haue armes by olde mettys as  
verey playnlyt it apperith by the addicion of tharmys of Fraunce  
to tharmys of Englond getyn by that moost nobull man prynce  
Edward the first getyn sonne of kyng Edward the thide y<sup>e</sup>  
tyme kyng of Englond after the talyng of kyng John of  
Fraunce i the batayl of Breyters . The whiche certan addicion was  
lesfull and righlyfli doon . and on the saame maner of Whiche  
myght a poore archer haue take a prynce or sum nobull lord . &  
so tharmys of that prynsoner : by hym so take righlyfli he may  
put to hym and to his harys .

**C**On the thide maner of Whiche we haue armes the whiche we  
haue by the graunting of a prynce or of sum other lordys .

**C**And ye most knall that thoos armes the whiche we haue of  
the graunting of a prynce or of a lord resayue no question why  
that he berith thoos same . for whi the prynce wylt not : that sich  
a question be askyt . whi he gaue to any man sych an armes as  
it is playn in the lathe of nature and Ciuyt . For that same  
that pleses ther prynce has the strength of lathe . but if any ma-  
take thoos armes afore . for that thyng the whiche is myne whith  
a righlyfli tiltyng whith olde deseruyng may not be take fro me .  
ner the prynce may not do hit righlyfli .

**C**he fawrith maner of Whiche we haue thoos armes the whiche  
we take on olde alme pur auctorite . as in theys dayes opyn-  
ly we se . how many poore men by theyr grace fauour laboure  
or deseruyng : ar made nobuls . sum by theyr prudens . su  
hi theyr malad . su bi theyr strength . su bi theyr conig . su bi od utes

**A**nd of theys men mony by theyz alene autorite haue take ar-  
mys to be borne to them and to ther bannis of whom it nedes  
not here to reherse y<sup>e</sup> namys . Neu the lees armys that be so takyn  
they may lefully and frely bear . Bot yit they be not of so grete  
dignyte and autorite as theos armys the whiche ar grauntyd day  
by day by the autorite of a prynce or of a lorde . Yet armys bi  
a manrys proper auctorite take : if an other man haue not bot  
ne theym afore : be of strength enogh .

**A**nd it is the opynyon of moni men that an herrod of armis  
may gyue armys . Bot I say if any sych armys be borne by a  
ny herrod gwyn that thos armys be of no more auctorite then  
theos armys the whiche be take by a manrys alene auctorite .

### **A**pplicit .

**A**Here in thys boke afore at content the booke of haukyng  
and hunteynge with other plesuris dyuerse as in the boke appertis  
and also of Cootarmuris a nobult Werke . And here noll en-  
dyng the booke of blasynge of armys translatyed and compytyed to  
gedyr at Seynt albans the yere from thincarnation of olde  
lorde Jhesu Crist . M . CCC . lxxxvi .

**H**ic finis diuīsōꝝ genōsis valde p̄tiliū vt iūētibꝝ p̄fēb̄t



**S**anctus albanus:

772051





10661 87

**PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET**

---

---

**UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY**

---

---

